Endovascular Techniques in the Management of CEREBROVASCULAR DISEASE

Edited by
Thomas J Masaryk • Peter A Rasmussen
Henry Woo • David Fiorella

Endovascular Techniques in the Management of Cerebrovascular Disease is an invaluable tool for neurology and neurosurgery fellows-in-training and practicing clinicians with an interest in endovascular procedures used in the management of cerebrovascular disease. This highly illustrated text benefits from the resources of a multiprofessional cerebrovascular center, that unifies expertise in diagnostic neuroradiology, neuroanesthesia, neurosurgical intensive care, stroke neurology and the basic neurosciences.

The first section of Endovascular Techniques in the Management of Cerebrovascular Disease reviews equipment, devices and therapeutic agents such as anti-coagulants and thrombolytics. The second section describes the clinical management of ischemic cerebrovascular disease, including thrombectomy and stenting; the third section is dedicated to hemorrhagic cerebrovascular disease and deals with aneurysms, subarachnoid hemorrhage and vascular malformations.

The techniques described are increasingly employed in the endovascular treatment for occlusive cerebrovascular disease, cerebral aneurysms, arteriovenous malformation and other extra- and intracranial cerebrovascular diseases. In keeping with the training objectives of the center, the text is designed to promote the development of problem-solving skills in the operating room, angiography suite, intensive care unit, inpatient ward and outpatient clinic.

WITH CONTRIBUTIONS FROM:

Bryson Borg
David Fiorella
Vivek A Gunugunta
Irene Katzan
Michael E Kelly

Thomas J Masaryk
Shaye Moskowitz
Peter A Rasmussen
Raymond D Turner IV
Henry Woo

www.informahealthcare.com
Endovascular Techniques in the Management of Cerebrovascular Disease

Edited by

Thomas J Masaryk MD
Director, Section of Neuroradiology
The Imaging Institute;
Center for Cerebrovascular Disease
The Neurological Institute
The Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, OH
USA

Peter A Rasmussen MD
Director, Department of Neurological Surgery
Center for Cerebrovascular Disease
The Neurological Institute
The Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, OH
USA

Henry Woo MD
Director, Department of Neurological Surgery
Cerebrovascular Center
Stony Brook University Medical Center
Stony Brook, NY
USA

David Fiorella MD PhD
Section of Neuroradiology
The Imaging Institute
The Center for Cerebrovascular Disease
The Neurological Institute
The Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, OH
USA

informa healthcare
Contents

List of contributors v

Preface vii

1. Imaging: informed decision-making
   Bryson Borg, David Fiorella and Thomas J Masaryk 1

2. The angiography suite: diagnostic devices and maneuvers
   David Fiorella and Thomas J Masaryk 27

3. Therapeutic options: pharmacology
   David Fiorella and Vivek A Gonugunta 43

4. Embolic agents and materials, stents, delivery systems and retrieval devices
   David Fiorella and Raymond D Turner IV 55

5. The role of endovascular therapies in acute ischemic stroke
   Thomas J Masaryk, Shaye Moskowitz and Irene Katzan 71

6. Subacute and elective revascularization of the cerebral vasculature
   Thomas J Masaryk, Irene Katzan and David Fiorella 87

7. Intracranial aneurysms and subarachnoid hemorrhage
   Michael E Kelly, Peter A Rasmussen and Thomas J Masaryk 111

8. Vascular malformations
   Henry Woo, David Fiorella, Michael E Kelly and Thomas J Masaryk 133

9. Venous disease: dural sinus thrombosis and occlusion
   Raymond D Turner IV and Thomas J Masaryk 157

10. The decision-making process: treatment planning for cerebrovascular disease
    Peter A Rasmussen 171

Index 181
Contributors

**Bryson Borg** MD
Department of Neuroradiology
Keesler Air Force Base
Biloxi, MS
USA

**David Fiorella** MD PhD
Section of Neuroradiology
The Imaging Institute
Center for Cerebrovascular Disease
The Neurological Institute
The Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, OH
USA

**Vivek A Gonugunta** MD FRCS
Endovascular Surgical Neuroradiology
Center for Cerebrovascular Disease
The Neurological Institute
The Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, OH
USA

**Irene Katzan** MD
Department of Neurology
Center for Cerebrovascular Disease
The Neurological Institute
The Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, OH
USA

**Michael E Kelly** MD FRSC
Endovascular Surgical Neuroradiology
Center for Cerebrovascular Disease
The Neurological Institute
The Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, OH
USA

**Thomas J Masaryk** MD
Section of Neuroradiology
The Imaging Institute
Center for Cerebrovascular Disease
The Neurological Institute
The Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, OH
USA

**Shaye Moskowitz** MD PhD
Endovascular Surgical Neuroradiology
Center for Cerebrovascular Disease
The Neurological Institute
The Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland OH
USA

**Peter A Rasmussen** MD
Department of Neurological Surgery
Center for Cerebrovascular Disease
The Neurological Institute
The Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, OH
USA

**Raymond D Turner IV** MD
Endovascular Surgical Neuroradiology
Center for Cerebrovascular Disease
The Neurological Institute
The Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, OH
USA

**Henry Woo** MD
Department of Neurological Surgery
Cerebrovascular Center
Stony Brook University Medical Center
Stony Brook, NY
USA
In his biography of Cleveland native Harvey Cushing, John Fulton describes the fortuitous series of circumstances that conspired to create the specialty of neurological surgery. The compulsive and competitive Dr Cushing trained as a surgeon under the precise tutelage of William Hallsted. On the recommendation of his friend and mentor, William Osler, Cushing spent the year following completion of his surgical residency traveling Europe. It was then, under the guidance of Professor Theodor Kocher in the laboratory of Professor Hugo Kronsche in Berne, Switzerland, that Cushing described the relationship between intracranial pressure and systemic blood pressure regulated by the vasomotor center in the medulla that would ultimately be known as the ‘Cushing reflex’. Prior to this time, vital signs (and in particular blood pressure) were not routinely charted during surgical procedures. Cushing continued his experiments as he toured Europe, performing studies in dogs in Professor Angelo Mosso’s laboratory in Turin, Italy. While in Italy, Cushing was serendipitously introduced to Scipione Riva-Rocci’s elegantly simple sphygmomanometer, which he promptly recognized as a significant addition to the operating room. Upon his return home the combination of his compulsive personality, watchful (albeit indirect) management of systemic and intracranial pressure, and career-long obsession with hemostasis (Cushing developed the silver hemoclip, and, with physicist W Bovie, introduced electrocoagulation) precipitated the beginning of neurosurgical practice.

In 1979, I came to Cushing’s home town as a medical student at the suggestion of my father. A local medical imaging company, Technicare, had just installed their first commercial digital subtraction angiography system at the Cleveland Clinic. Drs Paul Duscheneau, Mickey Weinstein, and Michael Modic were furiously imaging patients with the new device and publishing papers. The link between imaging and computers was strikingly powerful... my father had me hooked. I was extraordinarily fortunate to continue to benefit from this confluence of technology with the help of Dr Ralph Alfidi and my colleagues Jeff Ross, Paul Ruggieri, and Mike Modic, and perhaps more importantly the indulgence of my wife, Midge, and our four daughters.

Ingenious innovators such as Serbinenko, Engleson, Guglielmi and others have helped transform imaging from diagnostic adjunct to sophisticated guidance for definitive treatments (in a fashion analogous to the evolution of neurosurgical management hemostasis and intracranial pressure). Therapeutic devices will continue to develop in parallel with advances in image guided techniques. Presently, many of these are complimentary to conventional, open, neurosurgical procedures. As some techniques replace surgery, it seems unrealistic for radiologists to presume that surgeons will either watch idly or that, as imagers, they can remain uninvolved in pre- and post-procedure care and follow-up. In this respect I have been blessed to work as a true team with Peter, Henry, and David as well as the dedicated nurses and technologists in the angiography suite and the operating room at the Cleveland Clinic. Each contributes a unique and valuable skill set based on their training background; everyone recognizes that as a whole, the team functions better because of it... and (I truly believe) patients do better. In 2003 the group established the second formally credentialed fellowship in Endovascular Surgical Neuroradiology. In our own way, we each felt that a new specialty had arrived.

To each and every one, our sincerest thanks.

Thomas J Masaryk
2008
Team photo. Front row: Dr Harvey Cushing. Back row (left to right): Drs Peter Rasmussen, David Fiorella, Thomas Masaryk, Henry Woo.
Neurosurgery and neuroradiology have historically been complementary specialties: neurosurgery demands logical decision making and accurate therapeutic planning while diagnostic neuroradiology supplies ever more clinical data points through the evolution and application of digital imaging technologies. Endovascular surgical neuroradiology (also known as endovascular neurosurgery) combines the clinical needs of the former with the technical sophistication of the latter in a single specialty. The importance of mastery of the imaging concepts as a prerequisite to expeditious, yet thoughtful, decision making and safe clinical practice cannot be underestimated.

This is perhaps best exemplified in the setting of acute stroke, where the operative word is indeed ‘expeditious’. Intravenous thrombolysis using simple, single-slice CT scanning became the only approved therapy in the USA for acute ischemic stroke within the first 3 hours of onset on the basis of the National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke rt-PA Stroke Study Group (the NINDS rt-PA Trial). Similar trials performed in Europe demonstrated no benefit to thrombolytic therapy. A major difference in the trials was the time window for treatment: 3 hours in the North American study, 6 hours in Europe. Indeed, review of the US data demonstrates significantly better outcomes the sooner patients are treated (Figure 1.1). Hence the first caveat of acute stroke imaging: patients should be emergently transported to a facility with immediate imaging capability and a mechanism in place for rapid, accurate interpretation. Pre-emptive warning should be provided to the radiology department to facilitate imaging as rapidly as possible, regardless of the modality employed. National guidelines developed by the NINDS and adopted by the American Heart Association (AHA) suggest that acute stroke patients should be imaged within 20 minutes of initial arrival in the emergency department. The importance of efficient, detailed, and accurate communication among the transport team, clinical services, and radiology personnel cannot be overemphasized. (Indeed, the medical–legal implications are so great that the American College of Radiology has explicit recommendations regarding the documentation of the imaging and interpretation process and the communication to the requesting service.)

Familiarity with frequently used clinical scoring scales (Glasgow Coma Scale, National Institutes of Health Stroke Scale, Hunt–Hess Grade) by the imaging service and conversely the imaging signposts (hyperdense middle cerebral artery, decreased attenuation in greater than one-third of the vascular territory, Fisher Score) by the clinical services greatly facilitate the decision-making process.

## CT scanning

Shortly following Roentgen’s discovery of the X-ray at the end of the 19th century, Johan Rand, a Czech mathematician, began publishing his treatises on line integrals. Allan Cormack postulated, and documented, that the attenuation of X-rays through an object could be represented by such mathematical modeling. With the subsequent development and refinement of the analog-to-digital converter and the application of evolving computer technology, Godfrey Hounsfield produced the first transaxial tomographic maps of X-ray attenuation utilizing filtered back-projection reconstruction in the early 1970s. In 1979 Hounsfield and Cormack were awarded the Nobel Prize in Medicine.

While the basic principles of CT have remained the same, the engineering refinements have been impressive. Specifically, the X-ray source and opposing detector continue to be mechanically rotated about the patient but with broader coverage by the beam and detector at ever faster speeds of rotation. Eventually, data acquisition became so fast that the patient could be simply ‘pulled through’ the scanner during rotation and completely isotropic three-dimensional data sets could be acquired utilizing special ‘spiral reconstruction’ methods. Recent innovations using this technology have included small portable scanners designed for neurologic intensive care units, which move to the bedside, and multi-row spiral scanners (Figure 1.2a). Another exciting innovation is the high-end, vascular scanner with two X-ray sources and two sets of multi-row detectors. Such scanners may not only permit faster scanning, but also dual energy (‘subtracted’) angiographic studies (Figure 1.2b).

## CT scanning of the brain for cerebrovascular disease

There are advantages and disadvantages to the use of CT scanning in cerebrovascular disease. Advantages include:

- ready accessibility
- rapid acquisition
- high sensitivity to acute blood
- high-quality vascular imaging of occlusions, stenoses, and aneurysms is obtainable with contemporary scanners
- three-dimensional stereotactic targeting
- targeted relative perfusion maps.
Disadvantages include:

- less sensitivity to hyperacute infarction than diffusion-weighted MRI
- limited coverage for perfusion maps
- qualitative, not quantitative nature of perfusion imaging (unless performed with xenon)
- ionizing radiation, particularly to the lens
- artifact, particularly in the posterior fossa.

**Conventional CT scanning of the brain**

CT for acute stroke is commonly performed using 5–8 mm contiguous transverse sections obtained without intravenous contrast administration. Primary goals of the initial head CT head are:

- to exclude intracranial hemorrhage (Figure 1.3);
- to identify early signs of ischemic stroke (see below); and
to exclude neoplastic, inflammatory, or other processes that can mimic stroke clinically.

CT has an extraordinarily high sensitivity for detecting acute intracranial hemorrhage. The importance of appreciating early signs of stroke is exemplified by missed cases in ECASS trial, resulting in poorer outcomes after thrombolytic therapy. The conspicuity of infarcts on unenhanced CT images can be increased by the use of variable window width and center level settings at a workstation (in contrast to standard fixed windows on the printed films) in order to accentuate the gray matter–white matter contrast, as well as by contrast enhancement. Findings of acute ischemia within hours of onset, if present, are usually very subtle. Early CT findings of cerebral ischemia (which may or may not be visible) include:

- hypoattenuation of gray matter structures
- mass effect
- hyperdense arteries.

**Hypoattenuation of gray matter structures**

There may be blurring of the gray matter–white matter junction, owing to cytotoxic edema, which can be seen as early as 2 hours after onset. A specific example of the phenomenon is the so-called insular ribbon sign (Figure 1.4), in which the temporal lobe insula (which is composed of gray matter) becomes isodense to adjoining white matter. This sign of early middle cerebral artery (MCA) occlusion can be explained by its watershed position far from the collateral supply of both the anterior and posterior cerebral arteries, which leads to early irreversible damage.

Another example is ‘obscuration of the lentiform nucleus sign’ or decreased attenuation of the basal ganglia gray matter, which becomes isodense to adjacent white matter structures such as the internal capsule and the external capsule (see Figure 1.4). This region is supplied by lenticulostriate branches of the MCA that are end vessels and therefore prone to early irreversible damage after proximal MCA occlusion. A key parameter to document in the report is the geographic extent to which these changes are present. Specifically, retrospective review of the ECASS results suggest that when these subtle CT changes of completed strokes involve more than one-third of the suspected involved vascular territory, outcomes with thrombolytics are generally poor.

**Mass effect**

Examples of early mass effect include asymmetry or narrowing of the Sylvian fissure (in MCA infarcts) or subtle effacement of cortical sulci (Figure 1.5).
The sensitivity of detecting acute hemorrhage is excellent with CT scanning, exceeding 90%, although the specificity of increased attenuation continues to concern many. The increased attenuation coefficient of blood is primarily related to the attenuation coefficient of hemoglobin (contracted thrombus is 80–85 hounsfield units (HU)), which may degrade with time from ictus onset or even severe anemia to lessen the sensitivity of CT. Fisher et al. developed a grading scale that is often used in clinical practice; it has some predictive value in assessing the risk of developing vasospasm secondary to SAH (Table 1.1).

CT angiography

As alluded to above, the dissemination of faster spiral CT scan technology and the increased public awareness of acute stroke therapies has prompted the increasing adoption of advanced imaging techniques (CT angiography and relative perfusion mapping) in the setting of emergent cerebrovascular disease.
accidents (CVAs). (Minor drawbacks to this approach are the need for large-bore intravenous access, the need for iodinated contrast and concern over contrast reactions, and additional radiation exposure.) 33

Despite these concerns, the introduction of helical or spiral CT scanning, coupled with multi-row detectors, has greatly rejuvenated the role of CT in modern cerebrovascular imaging. 34 The relatively high-kilovoltage, thinly collimated X-rays used in contemporary CT scanners result in linear attenuation, due to tissue density, thereby providing excellent contrast resolution. The enormous increase in gantry rotation speed, coupled with improved heat tolerance of the X-ray tube, provides improved temporal resolution such that dynamic, thin-section, volumetric spiral CT examination can be performed as an ‘arterial snapshot’ approaches the anatomic information provided by catheter angiography. 35

Data acquisition

The important first step with any dynamic contrast study is to determine the exact time to start scanning after intravenous contrast administration in order to capture the bolus while it resides only within the vessels of interest. Two methods are used:

- bolus tracking, in which the software measures the attenuation values for a region of interest (e.g. the common carotid artery), and spiral scanning is automatically started as soon as a certain threshold is exceeded; 36 and
- test bolus administration, in which bolus transit time to the carotid arteries is estimated by injecting a small test volume of contrast with axial ‘same-level’ scans performed in the lower neck; scanning with the examination bolus is then initiated with an appropriate time delay. 37

Post-processing

Before starting the post-processing, it is frequently helpful to review the source data and axial images for calcifications, high-grade stenoses or occlusion. Subsequently a variety of post-processing computer algorithms can be applied to create two- and three-dimensional angiographic displays:

- multi-planar reformation (MPR), which essentially involves sagittal, axial, and coronal anatomic reconstructions (Figure 1.8); curved multi-planar reformation (cMPR) can be manually applied along the vessel course to provide excellent linear demonstration of the vessel lumen;
- maximum intensity projection (MIP), which is most commonly used three-dimensional technique for vascular imaging, in which a single layer of brightest voxels along a line of site (or projection) at a specified angle (orthogonal or oblique) is displayed (see Figure 1.8); a major drawback is that there is no depth information (i.e. it displays only the density of objects, not spatial information), and evaluation of the vascular lumen in regions of dense calcifications may be impossible with conventional MIP techniques;
- shaded surface display (SSD), in which the first layer of voxels within defined density thresholds is used for display, leading to the visualization of the surface of all structures that fulfill the threshold conditions. Depth information is preserved but the attenuation information is scaled proportionately. While very helpful in evaluation for intracranial aneurysms, SSD is less useful for the evaluation for stenoses, particularly those that are calcified;
- volume rendering (VR), in which all the information in the volume data set is used to select groups of voxels within a defined threshold density, after which a color and shading or opacity are assigned (e.g. low opacity for semitransparent structures); VR maintains both depth and density information, and it is perhaps the best three-dimensional technique for intra- and extracranial vessels (see Figures 1.2, 1.8).

Image interpretation and analysis

The overall accuracy of CT angiography for detecting thromboses and stenoses of large intracranial and extracranial arteries is approximately 95–99%. 38–41 It is comparable to catheter angiography in distinguishing between total and near-total occlusions. 42
Endovascular Techniques in the Management of Cerebrovascular Disease

The following approach is very helpful in interpreting extra and intracranial CT angiography:

1. All three-dimensional methods are subject to some loss of information, and therefore source data images are inspected first for quality of the study, calcifications, stenoses, and occlusions.
2. MIP images inspected in multi-planar format are examined for vascular detail. Thin MIPs (10–20 mm) are preferred for intracranial circulation.
3. Finally, if there is arterial wall calcification, curved MIP and VR are examined to evaluate vascular lumen and plaque dimensions.

Perfusion Imaging

Perfusion of normal brain tissue is maintained within a narrow range by auto-regulation of the cerebral vasculature. Cerebral blood volume (CBV) is normally 4–5 mL per 100 g. Normal blood flow in human gray matter is about 50–60 mL per 100 g per minute.\(^4\) Decreasing cerebral blood flow to < 35 mL per 100 g per minute (50–60% of normal) leads to the cessation of protein synthesis, although tissue can survive with no further additional insult to cerebral blood flow (CBF). With CBF reduced to < 20 mL per 100 g per minute (30–40% of normal) there is loss of neural function, and the tissue is at risk. (At these levels the patient will be neurologically impaired, but may recover.) Finally, when CBF falls to < 10 mL per 100 g for minute (< 20% of normal) there is irreversible cell death (Table 1.2).

The evolution of cerebral hemodynamic compromise can be described in stages.\(^4\) In stage 1, the cerebral vasculature

---

**Table 1.2** Cerebral blood flow (CBF) and oxygen utilization

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CBF (ml per 100 g tissue per minute)</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>45–65</td>
<td>Normal brain at rest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75–80</td>
<td>Gray matter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20–30</td>
<td>White matter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>EEG becomes flatline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Physiologic paralysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Brain stem auditory evoked response changes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Alterations in cell membrane transport (cell death; cerebrovascular accident)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CBF = CPP/CVR = MAP – ICP/CVR

CBF, cerebral blood flow; CPP, cerebral perfusion pressure; CVR, cerebrovascular resistance; ICP, intracranial pressure; MAP, mean arterial pressure.
attempts to maintain normal CBF by vasodilating (CBV increased). As hemodynamic compromise progresses to stage 2, CBF diminishes as autoregulatory vasodilatation is superseded. The brain continues to remain viable by increasing the fraction of oxygen extracted from the circulation – so called misery perfusion. If hemodynamic compromise continues, the final stage is cell death and infarction.

The imaging techniques utilized to evaluate cerebral perfusion can be categorized as follows:

- indicator dilution methods involving injection of a tracer detected over time;
- techniques that identify the degree of pre-existing autoregulatory reserve and vasoreactivity by imaging before and after a vasodilatory stimulus (e.g., Diamox SPECT); and
- techniques that measure oxygen extraction fraction (O15–PET).

Perfusion techniques may also be categorized as those that use diffusible tracers or those that rely on non-diffusible contrast agents. This is an important distinction in that the mathematical models used to quantify the data are unique to each.

**CT perfusion**

One of the early attempts at CTP imaging relied on stable xenon gas, which had the characteristics of being biologically inert, having a k-edge similar to that of iodinated contrast, being soluble in both water and lipid, and being freely diffusible across the blood–brain barrier. With this technique the measurement of CBF is a determination both of the amount of contrast agent in the feeding arteries as well as the amount that has passed into the brain parenchyma. Quantification of CBF requires knowledge of the arterial concentration (arterial input function, or AIF) and the tissue concentrations, or the partition coefficient between these two compartments. Following a baseline non-contrast scan, serial CT scans at preset locations are acquired during xenon inhalation at a concentration of approximately 28% over 4.3 minutes. The initial scans can be used as masks to produce subtracted images, which can be used to calculate tracer accumulation over time. Xenon concentrations can be measured in the expiratory ventilation circuit to calculate the AIF. The Kety–Schmidt equation is then solved voxel by voxel via iterative calculation to produce quantitative CBF maps. Despite the singular advantage of quantitative blood flow, this technique has historically been arduous and is practiced at only a limited number of centers.

Non-diffusible tracer techniques have become more popular with the advent of temporally faster spiral scanners. The central volume principle states that $\text{CBF} = \frac{\text{CBV}}{\text{MTT}}$, divided by mean transit time (MTT) from the time of arterial input to venous drainage. Calculation of MTT and CBF requires knowledge of the AIF, which, in the context of an intact blood–brain barrier, can be approximated by mathematical deconvolution. Contemporary CTP as well as MR perfusion measures brain perfusion by analyzing this dynamic enhancement of cerebral vasculature and parenchyma after a single intravenous bolus injection of contrast material.

**Data acquisition**

CTP has been performed with single-slice scanners but the examination is limited to 1 cm thickness. With multi-slice CT, a 2–3 cm-thick section can be examined. The anatomic region that clinical symptoms indicate is most likely affected by ischemia must be selected *a priori* for the examination (e.g., basal ganglia in most cases of MCA disease). A bolus of contrast material is injected at a high rate (usually 8 ml/s) using a power injector, and tissue attenuation is monitored as the contrast first reaches and then perfuses the brain with one image per second acquired during wash-in and wash-out. For each voxel from these scans, a time-attenuation plot is generated that corresponds to the relative wash-in–wash-out of contrast (Figure 1.9). From these plots parameters such as time-to-peak can be measured or calculated (ascending slope of the curve is the CBF, while the area under the time-attenuation curve is the CBV) for each voxel in the image.

![Figure 1.9](image)

CT perfusion imaging based on time density curve created voxel by voxel during bolus administration of iodinated contrast. (a) Time attenuation plot. (b) Mean transit time calculated as the FWHM of the curve while time to peak (TTP) is calculated from the start to peak attenuation. (c) Relative cerebral blood volume (rCBV) is calculated as the area under the curve while relative cerebral blood flow (rCBF) is the upslope. HU, hounsfield units.
A simplified CTP technique called perfused blood volume (PBV) is used by some institutions to triage patients for thrombolysis. With this technique, data acquired for CT angiography are used at the same time to assess perfusion of the whole brain CBV but, unlike the quantitative dynamic perfusion technique described above, PBV images do not provide information about CBF or mean transit time, which may be important parameters for assessing ‘tissue at risk’.

Post-processing

Semiautomatic post-processing is used to create scaled, color maps of TTP or MTT, CBF, and CBV in less than 1 minute (see Figure 1.9). Two mathematical approaches are used to calculate these parameters:

1. The maximum slope model requires a rapid, tight bolus to calculate the slope of the time-attenuation curve, which is used to approximate CBF. CBV is calculated from an enhancement ratio relative to the superior sagittal sinus. It is relatively insensitive to motion.
2. Deconvolution analysis models calculate regional MTT by deconvolving the time-attenuation curve. This method requires an arterial input function to deconvolve the curve, and it utilizes the central volume principle to calculate $CBF = CBV / MTT$. This method theoretically provides absolute values for CBF and CBV. Nevertheless, there are variables (choice of input function, recirculation correction), which may limit the accuracy of these values.

For practical purposes, ‘r’ is added before CBF and CBV indicating relative rather than absolute values of CBV and CBF because both techniques used for measurement of these parameters are limited in giving absolute values for a variety of reasons. Fiorella et al. recently demonstrated the variability in post-processing dynamic CTP data, suggesting that the current techniques are not sufficient to allow the use of quantitative values in clinical practice.

Image interpretation and analysis

CTP has much higher sensitivity than unenhanced CT for detecting early ischemia. During interpretation of CTP studies, color-coded parameter maps (Figure 1.10) are first visually assessed by comparing the cerebral hemispheres, with a sensitivity of over 90% in larger ischemic lesions. When unilateral or regional ischemic lesions are suspected, corresponding regions of interest in the two hemispheres can be drawn for comparison, yielding a percentage of reduction of both CBF and CBV for the affected hemisphere versus the normal side. As discussed above, TTP and MTT are very sensitive indicators of hemodynamic disturbances, while CBF and CBV may help to predict the outcome of an ischemic lesion.

In cases where there is arterial stenosis or occlusion with good cerebrovascular compensation or good collateral circulation, there may be prolonged TTP, normal CBF and normal or increased CBV. In patients with oligemic tissue, TTP may be prolonged, CBF reduced (but still > 60%) and CBV reduced (but still > 80%). In areas where tissue is at risk, TTP will be prolonged, CBF reduced (but still > 30%), and CBV reduced (but still > 60%). And in areas of completed infarction there will be marked prolongation or non-measurable TTP, CBF (reduced to < 30%) and CBV (reduced to < 40%). These parameter guidelines are based on comparison studies between CT and diffusion weighted MRI attempting to differentiate between reversible ‘penumbra’ and irreversible infarction.

As noted previously, an additional, simplified CTP technique (PBV) is used by some institutions to triage patients for thrombolysis. In this technique, data acquired for CT angiography are used at the same time to assess perfusion of the whole brain CBV but, unlike the quantitative dynamic perfusion technique described above, PBV images do not provide information about CBF or mean transit time, which may be important parameters for assessing ‘tissue at risk’. Two mathematical approaches are used to calculate these parameters:

1. The maximum slope model requires a rapid, tight bolus to calculate the slope of the time-attenuation curve, which is used to approximate CBF. CBV is calculated from an enhancement ratio relative to the superior sagittal sinus. It is relatively insensitive to motion.
2. Deconvolution analysis models calculate regional MTT by deconvolving the time-attenuation curve. This method requires an arterial input function to deconvolve the curve, and it utilizes the central volume principle to calculate $CBF = CBV / MTT$. This method theoretically provides absolute values for CBF and CBV. Nevertheless, there are variables (choice of input function, recirculation correction), which may limit the accuracy of these values.

For practical purposes, ‘r’ is added before CBF and CBV indicating relative rather than absolute values of CBV and CBF because both techniques used for measurement of these parameters are limited in giving absolute values for a variety of reasons. Fiorella et al. recently demonstrated the variability in post-processing dynamic CTP data, suggesting that the current techniques are not sufficient to allow the use of quantitative values in clinical practice.

Magnetic resonance imaging

Edward M Purcell and Felix Bloch were independently awarded the 1952 Nobel Prize in Physics for their development of new methods for nuclear magnetic precession (i.e. nuclear magnetic resonance, or NMR). Purcell first observed NMR signaling in 1945 while working at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology Radiation Laboratory. Along with similar research by Nicolaas Bloembergen and Robert Pound, this work was later expanded to a comprehensive theory of nuclear magnetic relaxation; while his contributions with Herman Carr on improved spin-echo techniques laid the groundwork for future techniques in MRI. Although Damadian patented the design and use of NMR for detecting cancer in 1974, he did not describe a method for generating pictures. The use of magnetic field gradients to localize and map the signals described by Purcell to a digital image matrix is...
credited to Paul Lauterbur and Sir Peter Mansfield, who were themselves awarded the 2003 Nobel Prize in Physiology and Medicine for their ingenuity. While the technique is exceptionally valuable in many cases of cerebrovascular disease, one must be aware of magnetic interactions between therapeutic implants and the main or gradient fields. Although beyond the scope of this text, an extensive review of this subject can be found in the work of Shellock. 

Magnetic resonance imaging for the evaluation of cerebrovascular disease

There are advantages and disadvantages to the use of MRI in cerebrovascular disease. Advantages include:

- extraordinary sensitivity of diffusion-weighted imaging to acute cerebral hemispheric ischemia
- contrast sensitivity to parenchymal blood breakdown products
- non-ionizing radiation
- vascular imaging without or with exogenous contrast
- selective vascular imaging of arteries or veins
- perfusion scanning of the entire brain
- three-dimensional stereotactic targeting.

Disadvantages include:

- hostile environment for acutely ill patients, (inherently takes more time)
- contraindicated in some patients with implants, whether risking actual harm to the patient (e.g. those with cerebral aneurysm clips, pacemakers, DBS electrodes) or merely degrading the image due to artifact (e.g. carotid stent, platinum coil)
- limited by patient motion/ artifact
- Gd-DTPA not FDA approved as a susceptibility contrast agent for perfusion imaging

Magnetic resonance imaging of the brain

Clinical MRI is predicated upon the relaxation properties of excited hydrogen nuclei in water. When the object to be imaged is placed in a powerful, uniform magnetic field, the spinning protons align either parallel to or against the main magnetic field. The difference in the number of parallel and anti-parallel nuclei is only about one in a million. However, the vast quantity of nuclei produce a detectable change in field – a radio signal. (The magnetic dipole moment of the nuclei precess about the axis of the main field; the frequency with which the dipole moments precess is called the Larmor frequency, governed by the Larmor equation. At conventional field strengths used in clinical practice the frequency approaches that of citizen band radio.) The tissue is then briefly exposed to stimulating pulses of synchronous (i.e. resonant) electromagnetic energy (i.e. a radiofrequency (RF) pulse) in a plane perpendicular to the magnetic field, causing some of the magnetically aligned hydrogen nuclei to assume a temporary non-aligned higher energy state. (The frequency of the pulses is also governed by the Larmor equation.) Upon termination of the stimulating pulse, the protons ‘relax’ by emitting a radio signal as they again align parallel to the magnetic field. In order to localize the signal from tissue in three-dimensional space within the magnet, three orthogonal magnetic gradients are applied. The first is the slice selection, which is applied during the RF pulse. Next comes the phase encoding gradient, and then finally the frequency encoding gradient, during the signal sampling period. In order to create the image, spatial information must be recorded along with the received tissue-relaxation RF signal. For this reason, the linearly variable magnetic fields, or gradients, are applied in addition to the strong static, or baseline, main field to allow encoding of the position of the nuclei. When received, the signals are recorded in a temporary memory termed k-space; this is the spatial frequency weighting in two or three dimensions of a real space object as sampled by MRI. The RF information is subsequently inverse-Fourier transformed by a computer into real space to obtain the desired image.

While CT provides good spatial resolution, MRI provides far better contrast resolution (the ability to distinguish subtle differences between two tissues). The basis of this ability is the complex library of RF pulse sequences, which is optimized to provide image contrast based on subtle chemical sensitivities of MRI. For example, injured tissue tends to develop edema, which makes a T2-weighted sequence that is sensitive for detection of pathology, and it is generally able to distinguish pathologic tissue from normal tissue. A notable eccentricity of conventional MRI is the changing, evolutionary pattern of fresh blood on different pulse sequences, caused by the changes in oxidative state of iron (hemoglobin): oxy-, deoxy-, met-hemoglobin, and finally ferritin or hemosiderin. Such changes occur over a period of days to months, producing paramagnetic effects (bright) on T1-weighted scans and susceptibility effects (dark) on gradient echo studies (Table 1.3).

### Table 1.3 MR signal changes in hemorrhage at high field (1.0–3.0T) relative to cortex

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Heme moiety</th>
<th>Time of appearance</th>
<th>$T_1$</th>
<th>$T_2$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oxyhemoglobin</td>
<td>Immediately – first several hours</td>
<td>Unchanged or decreased</td>
<td>Increased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deoxyhemoglobin</td>
<td>Hours—several days</td>
<td>Unchanged or decreased</td>
<td>Decreased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intracellular methemoglobin</td>
<td>First several days</td>
<td>Increased</td>
<td>Increased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extracellular methemoglobin</td>
<td>Several days – months</td>
<td>Increased</td>
<td>Increased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferritin/hemosiderin</td>
<td>Several days – indefinitely</td>
<td>Unchanged or decreased</td>
<td>Decreased</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adapted from Gomori et al.64
The term ‘conventional MRI’ typically denotes those imaging techniques that do not require special, high-speed gradient systems (i.e. spin echo and gradient echo) from those that do (e.g. echo planar diffusion and perfusion imaging). Conventional MRI continues to have a role in the patient who presents with stroke symptoms because it can reliably rule in or rule out non-ischemic processes, and because it is better able to discriminate between acute, subacute, and chronic infarcts (Figure 1.11). It can also differentiate venous from arterial ischemic infarcts by demonstrating vasogenic edema and hemorrhage (a common finding even in early venous infarcts) (Figure 1.12), and it can detect incidental arterial stenosis or occlusions by showing diminished or absent normal flow voids on spin echo images. It can also detect carotid or vertebral dissections using fat-suppressed pulse sequence.63

Diffusion imaging of the brain

Diffusion-weighted imaging (DWI) is a high-speed imaging technique with remarkable sensitivity and specificity to acute infarction compared to CT and conventional MRI. DWI can depict infarcted tissue in the cerebral hemispheres as early as minutes after the occlusion of the feeding vessel.66,67 In DWI, the sensitivity is derived from additional pulsed gradients that are applied before and after the signal-producing RF pulse. These gradients sensitize the sequence to random molecular (Brownian) motion or ‘diffusion’ of water protons. (This motion may be restricted or limited by cell membranes, e.g. intracellular water of ischemic edema, versus free water in the extracellular space.) The gradients are applied in three different directions (anterior–posterior, superior–inferior, and side-to-side) during three different image acquisitions. Because of the directionality of the brain’s fiber tracts, this helps to counteract the problems caused by anisotropy (direction-dependant movement). Ultimately, these image data sets can be combined to produce a so-called a trace image, which is typically used for interpretation/ diagnostic screening.

This diffusion sensitivity is quantified by a term, the b-value of a pulse sequence (determined primarily by the magnitude and duration of motion sensitizing gradients). The higher the b-value, the greater the sensitivity to restricted diffusion (i.e. ischemic edema). Any process causing restriction of diffusion appears brighter on DWI, and vice versa. Calculated images can also be created from these data sets that display the correlation coefficient of diffusion as a gray scale image. Images are acquired at multiple b-values in order to calculate apparent diffusion co-efficients (ADC) and generate ADC map images. Any process causing restricted diffusion appears darker on ADC map images, and vice versa.

Acute ischemic lesions are characterized by high signal intensity on DWI and low ADC values. The signal intensity of acute stroke on DWI increases during the first week after symptom onset and decreases thereafter, but it may retain a significant amount of brightness for longer periods.66 The signal on DWI often remains hyperintense for weeks,66 while ADC values gradually increase over 7–10 days (seen as lesions getting brighter on ADC map images).69 Lesion size on DWI is a good predictor of minimal completed infarct volume.70

Several patterns of ischemic lesions can be differentiated on DWI in patients with underlying anterior circulation ischemic disease:71,72

- typical large confluent ‘cortical territorial infarct’ (Figure 1.13a) (e.g. MCA or anterior cerebral artery occlusion in absence of adequate collateral circulation);
- ‘subcortical infarcts’ due to deep perforator occlusions (e.g. proximal M1 occlusion in the presence of good collateral vessels);
- ‘typical territorial infarct with fragmentation’ (e.g. spontaneous or induced thrombolysis of a large vascular territory with dissemination of emboli in the same territory (Figure 1.13b));
- ‘shower of infarcts’ (e.g. fragmented embolus of cardiac or cervical carotid origin to multiple vascular territories (Figure 1.13c)); and
- ‘Border zone infarcts’, which may be cortical (superficial) or subcortical watershed infarcts (Figure 1.13d).

Microembolism during endarterectomy and carotid stenting has been shown by intraoperative Doppler sonography,73 while DWI can show evidence of infarcts caused by these microemboli.74–77 The incidence of inaprocedure microembolism is related to multiple risk factors, including symptomatic status of the patient and plaque morphology. Fortunately, most of the resulting microinfarcts are clinically silent.79 However, this opens a new avenue of stroke prediction based on clinically silent micro-infarcts seen on DWI.79

Posterior circulation acute infarcts (Figure 1.14) have basically the same imaging features (i.e. they are brighter on DWI and

![Figure 1.11](image-url)
darker on ADC maps). However, DWI has relatively lower sensitivity to brainstem and cerebellar infarcts for a variety of reasons:

- Image degradation occurs close to the skull base by susceptibility artifact (because of bones, the paranasal sinus, and dental amalgam) in the presence of strong diffusion gradients;
- Lesions are usually smaller, and therefore they may not show up on DWI or may not be appreciated by some readers; and
- The different degree of packing of infratentorial fiber tracts and gray matter relative to the hemispheres. 80,81

Figure 1.12
Vernous infarction (a) T2 weighted scan demonstrating heterogeneous defect in the left inferior temporal lobe of mixed increased and decreased signal (open arrow). Notice lack of “flow void” in the left sigmoid sinus. (b) Higher slice demonstrating finger-like projection of subcortical high signal consistent with vasogenic edema with areas of low signal in the adjacent cortex (arrow) suspicious for susceptibility artifact of blood breakdown products. (c,d) Diffusion tensor image and ADC map confirm ischemia only in the cortex (bright on diffusion, low on ADC) with “T2 shine-through” (bright on diffusion, bright on ADC) secondary to vasogenic edema. (e) MR venogram confirming transverse-sigmoid sinus thrombosis resulting in a hemorrhagic temporal lobe infarction and venous hypertension.
Endovascular Techniques in the Management of Cerebrovascular Disease

Magnetic resonance angiography

MRA has proven to be a useful, non-invasive tool for evaluation of the intra-and extracranial vasculature since its first clinical application over 10 years ago. It is an established clinical tool in extracranial carotid disease, with sensitivity and specificity of around 90%. While technical details of MRA techniques are beyond the scope of this chapter, the three major techniques currently used for MRA are summarized below. The goal of each method is to distinguish between flowing blood and surrounding stationary soft tissues.

Time-of-flight (saturation) method

The time-of-flight (TOF) method is commonly used and has a very high sensitivity to flow. There are two- and three-dimensional TOF techniques. The accuracy of the TOF method, particularly as a non-invasive complement to carotid duplex scanning, is well established. Additionally, because DWI is inherently a very highly T2-weighted sequence, lesions with vasogenic edema appear brighter on DWI, not because of restricted diffusion but because of its T2 characteristic; hence the shine-through effect. This is the major advantage of the ADC map; these mimics of stroke do not have low signal on the ADC map as an infarct would.

Hence, this pitfall can be avoided by examining the ADC map (Figure 1.16). However, a potential pitfall in this approach has been termed ‘pseudo-normalization’ of the infarct on the ADC map (usually on day 5), which is due to a balancing effect between cytotoxic and vasogenic edema at about this time. Fortunately, the diagnosis has usually been established by this point in the clinical time course, and patients are seldom imaged as remotely as that from the onset of ictus.

Phase contrast (subtraction) method

The phase contrast method is a more time-consuming technique, and it is not commonly used in routine neurovascular evaluation. It is based on the phase shifts between stationary tissues and flowing blood, and it can provide both qualitative information and quantitative (direction and velocity) information about blood flow.

Venous infarcts can be bright on DWI but because there is often a combination of cytotoxic and vasogenic edema, the signal is more heterogeneous and the evolutionary pattern is different (see Figure 1.12). It is important to remember that other pathologic entities (notably abscess or neoplasm) may also be increased in signal on DWI (Figure 1.15). In the case of an abscess, this distinction can be particularly difficult, although with other pathologic processes the DWI may be less hyperintense, a function of so-called T2 shine-through. Additionally, because DWI is inherently a very highly T2-weighted sequence, lesions with vasogenic edema appear brighter on DWI, not because of restricted diffusion but because of its T2 characteristic; hence the shine-through effect. This is the major advantage of the ADC map; these mimics of stroke do not have low signal on the ADC map as an infarct would.

Hence, this pitfall can be avoided by examining the ADC map (Figure 1.16). However, a potential pitfall in this approach has been termed ‘pseudo-normalization’ of the infarct on the ADC map (usually on day 5), which is due to a balancing effect between cytotoxic and vasogenic edema at about this time. Fortunately, the diagnosis has usually been established by this point in the clinical time course, and patients are seldom imaged as remotely as that from the onset of ictus.

Figure 1.13
(a) MRD cortical infarct, (b) MRD fragmented embolus–MCA infarct, (c) MRD embolic shower, (d) watershed infarction MRD.
Imaging: informed decision-making

For three-dimensional post-processing, only multi-planar reformation and maximum intensity projection (MIP) methods (as discussed above under CTA) are routinely used for MRI studies. For practical purposes, the following points are important to remember during image analysis and interpretation:

- always thoroughly inspect the source data images to avoid misinterpretations related to post-processing errors and artifacts; 99,100
- diminished signal or flow defect should not be attributed solely to stenosis or occlusion unless other technical causes are excluded (e.g., the presence of a metallic stent, signal loss due to vascular looping or tortuosity, flow saturation or intravoxel dephasing; 99,100 note that maximum intensity projection images (a post-processing method) are prone to overestimate stenosis); 89,100
- the question of occlusion versus near occlusion and tandem or diffuse stenosis is best solved by contrast MRA (if not primarily performed) or by correlation with ultrasound.

As one can appreciate, it is critical to understand the technical aspects and flow dynamics in order to grade stenosis accurately as well as to lower the observer variability. 101

Flow in the vessels. Technically this method is very analogous to DWI, but the imaging gradients are scaled to detect macroscopic, faster arterial or venous flow, rather than the microscopic molecular, Brownian motion of DWI.

Contrast MRA (luminal opacification) method

Analogous to CT angiography (Figure 1.17), contrast MRA enables vessels take visualized by virtue of enhancement of the lumen with MRI contrast agents during the arterial phase of an intravenously administered bolus of a paramagnetic contrast agent. Likewise, this is a dynamic technique, and therefore the timing of the start of acquisition is critical; the two methods used for this purpose are essentially the same as discussed above under CTA (timing bolus and bolus tracking). Contrast MRA is increasingly being used for examining the extracranial vasculature, 53 and it is considered an adequate diagnostic test before surgery. 89,105

Additionally, intracranial studies performed with exceedingly short echo times (to minimize susceptibility artifact from coils) may be used in lieu of conventional angiography to follow aneurysms after treatment for coil compaction. 59,106

For three-dimensional post-processing, only multi-planar reformation and maximum intensity projection (MIP) methods (as discussed above under CTA) are routinely used for MRI studies. For practical purposes, the following points are important to remember during image analysis and interpretation:

(a) (b) (c)

(d) (e) (f)

Figure 1.14

(a) Hyperdense basilar artery on CT, suspicious for thrombotic embolus. (b) Delayed diffusion scan demonstrates clear-cut infarction, confirmed with ADC map (c). (d) FLAIR T2 weighted scan shows infarct. Confirmed basilar occlusion on native (e) and MIP (f) MR angiogram.
Endovascular Techniques in the Management of Cerebrovascular Disease

Endovascular Techniques in the Management of Cerebrovascular Disease

To detect cerebral hemodynamic impairment, (e.g. in the right cerebral hemisphere when the right internal carotid artery is occluded).

The key points of MR perfusion imaging in acute stroke studies can be summarized as follows:

- Infarct size on initial CBV map is the best predictor of final infarct volume, compared to other parameters;
- CBF and MTT map defects (meaning decreased flow and increased mean transit time) generally have poor correlation with final infarct volume;
- CBF and MTT map defects indicate hemodynamic impairment and are better predictors of lesion growth (probably as a result of threshold effects);
- TTP, if increased (>6 seconds) indicates hemodynamic impairment, – increased TTP is the most commonly seen perfusion abnormality in early stroke but, like MTT and CBF, it overestimates the final infarct volume.

MR and CT perfusion studies, in conjunction with parenchymal scanning and angiographic techniques, already appear to be having an impact in patient selection for treatment of acute cerebrovascular disease, extending the time window for treatment in those patients with the necessary vascular reserve to sustain viable brain tissue beyond 3 hours.

Magnetic resonance perfusion imaging

MR perfusion imaging can be performed by several techniques: arterial spin labeling and the more common, dynamic method of bolus infusion of susceptibility contrast. Like CT perfusion, a bolus of contrast material is rapidly infused intravenously and a hemodynamic map is generated that is based on the degree of susceptibility produced by the contrast material. In clinical practice this represents an ‘off-label’ use of Gd-DTPA in which the agent is used not to increase signal (its normal use as a paramagnetic contrast) but to decrease signal on the basis of its susceptibility effect on T2-weighted sequences used for perfusion imaging (Figure 1.18). This hemodynamic map makes possible the calculation of the same parameters as discussed above under CTP (although the time-intensity curve is inverted); MTT, TTP, CBV, and CBF maps are then generated for interpretation.

The significance of MR perfusion imaging in the setting of stroke (often in combination with DWI) is basically threefold:

- Identify tissue at risk;
- To predict the final infarct volume and hence the clinical outcome; and
- To detect cerebral hemodynamic impairment, (e.g. in the right cerebral hemisphere when the right internal carotid artery is occluded).

The key points of MR perfusion imaging in acute stroke studies can be summarized as follows:

- Infarct size on initial CBV map is the best predictor of final infarct volume, compared to other parameters;
- CBF and MTT map defects (meaning decreased flow and increased mean transit time) generally have poor correlation with final infarct volume;
- CBF and MTT map defects indicate hemodynamic impairment and are better predictors of lesion growth (probably as a result of threshold effects);
- TTP, if increased (>6 seconds) indicates hemodynamic impairment, – increased TTP is the most commonly seen perfusion abnormality in early stroke but, like MTT and CBF, it overestimates the final infarct volume.

MR and CT perfusion studies, in conjunction with parenchymal scanning and angiographic techniques, already appear to be having an impact in patient selection for treatment of acute cerebrovascular disease, extending the time window for treatment in those patients with the necessary vascular reserve to sustain viable brain tissue beyond 3 hours.
Figure 1.16
Right middle cerebral artery infarct. (a) FLAIR, (b) Diffusion, (c) ADC, (d) TTP map demonstrating virtually no flow centrally. (e) rCBV and (f) rCBF maps suggest persistent lack of flow centrally with increased flow at the margins of the defect consistent with recanalization of a thrombotic embolus after completion of the infarct. (g) MRA demonstrates partial right MCA recanalization.

Nuclear medicine
In the 1950s and early 1960s, Hal Anger developed a device to detect iatrogenically administered, gamma-emitting, radioisotopes within the body for diagnostic and therapeutic purposes. His work serves as the basis for most contemporary nuclear imaging. The Anger camera consists of a series of lead collimators, placed between the detector surface and the patient; these collimators serve to minimize scatter. The detector is a scintillation crystal, which produces light flashes when an impinging gamma-ray reaches and interacts with the crystal. The scintillations are detected by an array of photomultiplier tubes optically coupled to the crystal. The photomultipliers produce an output signal in the form of an electrical current, which is proportional to the energy of the incident-stimulating gamma-ray. The electrical signal may be amplified, sorted by a pulse height analyzer, and then registered as a ‘count’. Depending on the position of the event, the phototubes are variably activated. Hence, the entire system response yields positional information, although the spatial resolution is less than that of CT or MRI.
SPECT is a nuclear imaging technique much like CT, except that rather than producing cross-sectional images from external X-rays passing through the body, gamma-emitting radiopharmaceuticals (single photon emitters or positron emitters) are detected in multiple views by rotating a single (or preferably, multiple) Anger camera(s) about the area of interest. Scintillation crystals for SPECT imaging are typically composed of sodium iodide with trace amounts of thallium. Using back projection techniques, cross-sectional images are then computed with the axial field of view determined by the axial field of view of the gamma-camera. Data reconstruction must account for emitted rays and also those attenuated within the patient (i.e. photons emanating from deep inside the patient are considerably attenuated by surrounding tissues). Whereas in CT, attenuation is a key component of the imaging process, in SPECT attenuation degrades the image and this must be corrected or accounted for.

A radioisotope such as technetium-99m is attached to a delivery compound that passes through the blood–brain barrier and is avidly taken up by the brain parenchyma, with uptake proportional to cerebral blood flow. Two common delivery compounds are hexamethylpropyleneamine oxime (HMPAO) and ethyl cysteinate dimer (ECD). Scans may be performed before and after administration of a cerebral vasodilator (e.g. Diamox) to provide a qualitative assessment of the level of vasomotor reserve (Figure 1.19).

Positron emission tomography imaging for cerebrovascular disease

The main advantage of positron emission tomography (PET) is that it provides quantitative physiologic data. Its disadvantages include:

- expense;
- low spatial and contrast resolution;
- its technically demanding nature; and
- the fact that it cannot be performed emergently.

PET is a tomographic nuclear imaging procedure first described in the early 1970s by Hoffman and Phelps. It uses radiopharmaceutical-labeled positron emitters (i.e. electron annihilation reaction induced gamma-rays). Positron emitters are attractive on the basis of their active participation in physiologic pathways, but they have the drawback of exceedingly short half-lives (e.g. O-15 has a half life of approximately 2 minutes), which necessitates a cyclotron for on-site production.

The PET principle is as follows. A low dose of labelled positron emitter such as C-11, N-13, O-15 or F-18 is injected into the patient, who is scanned by the tomographic system. Scanning consists of either a dynamic series of images or a static image obtained after an interval during which the radiopharmaceutical enters the biochemical process of interest. The scanner detects the spatial and temporal distribution of the radiolabel by detecting gamma-rays during the so-called emission scan. The gamma-rays emitted occur by positive beta-decay, the annihilation reaction between the positron and a shell electron of a neighbouring atom, which produces two 511 keV gamma-rays, that travel in diametrically opposite directions (owing to the conservation of energy and momentum laws). The two gamma-rays are detected by a
Ultrasound

Cardiovascular and cerebral ultrasonography was first performed in the early 1950s at Lund University by cardiologist Inge Edler and physicist Carl Hertz. Hertz was familiar with using ultrasonic reflectoscopes for non-destructive materials testing, and together they developed the idea of using this method in medicine. In December 1953, the method was used to generate an 'echo-encephalogram', and Edler and Hertz published their ideas in 1954.118

The Doppler effect was first described by the Austrian mathematician and physicist, Johann Christian Doppler (1803–1853) in 1842. Although it was first described in reference to light emitted by stars, the Doppler effect is applicable to any kind of wave, whether electromagnetic or mechanical, and thus also to ultrasound. Shortly thereafter, in 1880, the brothers Jacques and Pierre Curie demonstrated the 'piezoelectric effect'. Piezoelectric crystal are capable of generating high frequency pressure waves in a predetermined direction, as well as detecting their echo from reflected objects (stationary or moving).

It wasn’t until 1959 that DL Franklin et al. produced a piezoelectric flowmeter that could be mounted directly on blood vessels, in which short ultrasound pulses were transmitted through the vessel lumen between two piezoelectric crystals, and the difference in transit time between upstream and downstream ultrasound pulses was used for measurement of instantaneous coincidence counting detection system, and, after proper filtering, the collected raw data sinograms are reconstructed into a cross-sectional image. Because the 'coincidence event' must have occurred along a straight line connecting two detectors, and because the probability of absorption of the two gamma-rays is independent of the position of the event along that imaginary line, PET is an inherently quantitative imaging method allowing the measurement of regional concentrations of the radiopharmaceutical injected after proper calibration. To achieve quantitative detection, several problems have to be overcome, including Compton scattering, random coincidences, and tissue absorption. It is worth noting that, owing to the high energy gamma-rays emitted by beta-decay, these systems require special detectors (e.g. bismuth germanate, BGO).

Dynamic data acquisition is performed when the data are to be quantified. In this technique, scans are acquired over times as short as 30 seconds. The most important technique for analysis of dynamic data is input deconvolution. Using this mathematical technique, quantitative tissue perfusion can be performed.

The major problems with three-dimensional data acquisition are the large number of random coincidences counted and the data acquisition and reconstruction time. Presently oxygen extraction fraction (OEF) as determined by PET is being used to define patients who may be amenable to extracerebral–intracerebral bypass.114–117

Figure 1.19
Acetazolamide SPECT study of right MCA ischemia. Notice the defect worsens on the “Post” scans indicative of a lack of additional vascular reserve in the right MCA territory with acetazolamide stimulated vasodilatation.
flow velocity. Subsequently, Doppler frequency shift was used for the detection of blood velocity patterns transcutaneously, first described by S Satomura in 1959.

Today’s ultrasound instruments represent serial refinements of these early observations, primarily through evolution of Doppler spectral analysis (again with the aid of the analog-to-digital converter and improved computer technology allowing real-time Fourier transformation). Although coupled with increasingly sophisticated imaging (e.g. color flow, power Doppler), the primary diagnostic metric continues to be velocity measurements (as a reflection of underlying vascular pathology), the imaging component primarily being used as a means to ensure the accuracy and reproducibility. Indeed, ‘reproducibility’ is the operative word relative to cerebrovascular ultrasound.

Doppler ultrasound for cerebrovascular disease

Advantages of Doppler ultrasound include:

- its ready accessibility and the fact that it can be performed at the bedside; and
- the fact that it can test for flow-limiting stenoses as well as emboli.

Its disadvantages include the facts that it is:

- operator-dependent;
- potentially time-consuming;
- able to give only poor spatial resolution of distal vasculature; and
- non-quantitative.

Transcranial Doppler was initially described by Aaslid et al. in the 1980s utilizing a 2 MHz transducer. Subsequently it has gained popularity as means to follow patients (serially and reproducibly) who have suspected vasospasm following subarachnoid hemorrhage (at the bedside); document and follow focal, atherosclerotic intracranial stenoses pre- and post-treatment; detect microemboli; and also confirm clinical suspicions of brain death (Figure 1.20) (Table 1.4). More recently, transcranial and intravascular ultrasound probes have been used as an adjunct to thrombolytic therapy for acute stroke.

Doppler ultrasound is likewise popular and readily available for extracranial disease. And, like transcranial studies, these examinations are not only subject to the vagaries of individual operators, but the velocity measurements may also be significantly affected by hardware and signal processing. Thus these studies require diligent attention to technique with a systematic quality-assurance program in order to serve as reliable (reproducible) indicators of extent of stenosis. This was perhaps best demonstrated during the ACAS trial in which all screening ultrasound laboratories were vetted before patients were recruited; substantial variability was found in velocity measurements, based on hardware manufacturer.

Cerebral angiography

In the same year that Cushing recorded his seminal observations regarding intracranial pressure, Roentgen was awarded the Nobel Prize for his discovery of X-rays. Already in use in medicine, Haschek and Lindenthal were creating radiographs of blood vessels by performing experiments in cadavers using radio opaque solutions. However, it wasn’t until the late 1920s that the first attempt to create cerebral angiograms in humans were made by Egaz Moniz, using crude halide solutions; many of the first patients did not survive. (Moniz, a neurologist, also received a Nobel Prize for his work on frontal leukotomy in 1949.)

In the first half of the 20th century, fluoroscopic imaging was dreadfully dim. It was not until the introduction of the image intensifier and television systems in the 1950s that image quality improved to the extent that intravascular maneuvers could be performed with any degree of safety. The formulation of more physiologic (and safe) iodinated contrast agents, the development of rapid film changers, and the introduction of new techniques improved to the extent that intravascular maneuvers could be performed with any degree of safety. The formulation of more physiologic (and safe) iodinated contrast agents, the development of rapid film changers, and the introduction of new techniques

Figure 1.20
TransCranial Doppler (TCD) of (a) dramatic left MCA vasospasm velocity profiles over time. Notation on the right indicates the depth of insonation (66mm) as well as mean velocity (134 cm/sec). (b) Relatively blunted and ‘bi-phasic’ velocity profiles reflective of extraordinarily high intracranial pressure and consistent with brain death.
for vascular access at approximately the same time (1952) led to the rise of cerebral angiography as a legitimate diagnostic tool,\textsuperscript{132} and by extension neuroradiology as a subspecialty.

Film screen angiography, while having excellent spatial resolution, was low in contrast and had the distinct disadvantage that each image was serially developed in a chemical film processor. But, as with the imaging modalities described above, the introduction of the analog-to-digital converter and of real-time, computerized signal processing led to the digitization of angiography and the potential for dynamic, real-time, high-contrast subtracted angiograms (Figure 1.21a,b).\textsuperscript{13,133–135} While image quality initially did not compete with the film screen, the near real-time feedback of any maneuver performed under fluoroscopy immediately transformed the angiography system from a diagnostic device to a therapeutic tool.

The digitization of cerebral angiography took place in the mid- and late 1970s. Simultaneously with these developments, physicians began to perform bolder and more ambitious percutaneously paced, catheter-directed treatments. In 1974 Sehbinenko described the use of balloon-tipped catheters and detachable balloons for the treatment of cerebral aneurysms.\textsuperscript{136} In 1978, Andres Gruntzig captivated the imagination of an even broader audience with the first reports of coronary balloon angioplasty.\textsuperscript{136,137} The inevitable introduction of real-time digital roadmapping for complex catheterizations solidified the role of the angiography system as more than a ‘camera’. In the interval since the late 1970s the technological evolution in endovascular surgical neuroradiology have been primarily catheter- and implantable device-related.

Nevertheless, transaxial rotation of the C-arm with the image intensifier (through an arc of 270\textdegree) detecting exposures from the X-ray source at three frames per second can produce projections that may be reconstructed in a fashion comparable to CT. Unfortunately the contrast resolution of image intensifiers is limited such that the vasculature can only be visualized with intra-arterial injections. Nevertheless, three-dimensional surface-rendered and multi-planar reconstructions of lesions such as aneurysms and vascular malformations with this technique can be extraordinarily helpful in the planning and execution of endovascular treatment (Figure 1.21c–e).\textsuperscript{138–140}

### Digital catheter angiography for cerebrovascular disease

Advantages of digital catheter angiography are that it can provide:

- the highest resolution and contrast images of cerebral vascular anatomy (the ‘gold standard’);
- dynamic images showing arterial, capillary, and venous phases;
- three-dimensional stereotactic imaging; and
- parenchymal imaging.

Its disadvantages include

- its invasive nature and associated risks;
- the use of ionizing radiation; and
- the expense.

Digital angiography systems potentially stand at the threshold of another round of innovation with the introduction of digital, flat-panel detectors and the gradual passing of older image intensifier systems. X-ray detectors based on flat-panel arrays derived from a hydrogenated amorphous silicone (a-Si:H) have become increasingly available in recent years. These detectors are available in two basic types: direct X-ray detectors and indirect X-ray detectors.\textsuperscript{141} In direct X-ray detectors the flat-panel array is coupled to a photo-conductor, which detects the X-rays and produces an electrical charge that is then stored in the pixel storage capacitance until read out. In indirect detectors, the flat-panel array is coated with a phosphor material, which converts the detected X-rays to visible photons; these are then detected using a photoelectric converter in the pixel structure and stored in the pixel until read out (Figure 1.22a,b).

Evaluation of existing flat-panel X-ray detector technology shows that all current panels are based on thin film transistor (TFT) arrays. The TFT array consists of photo-diodes that collect light from a phosphor (selenium, cesium, or gadolinium); the photo-diodes cover the TFT array and convert incident x-rays to photons. Detector signal processing electronics convert the analog photo-diode signal to a true digital signal. TFT technology requires all connections between photo-diode to run horizontally, occupying potential active area. The TFT technology in medical applications limits active photo-diode area to about 50%, meaning that 50% of photons produced miss an active area and are discarded or contribute to noise by scattering into the adjacent detector areas.

Complementary metal oxide silicone (CMOS) is an alternate technology for producing flat-panel X-ray detectors.\textsuperscript{142} CMOS allows much higher density circuits to be fabricated. CMOS is a three-dimensional process that allows active fill areas to approach 100%. CMOS flat panels have nearly double the efficiency of their TFT counterparts. The ability to incorporate the electronics on the same substrate as the detector array also allow significant reduction in heat. This technology also potentially allows more compact plates, greatly increased manufacturing yield by reducing physical connections, and improved system reliability and reduced service cost. Nevertheless, it remains to be seen whether this type of technology can be adapted for medical applications, and in particular angiographic systems, in an economic fashion.

One significant difference in the use of direct digital detectors versus image intensifiers in angiography systems is the much higher contrast sensitivity of the FD detectors as well as the lack of distortion (e.g. pin-cushion artifact) normally associated with image intensifiers.\textsuperscript{143,144} Three-dimensional rotational acquisitions and reconstructions much more closely approximate conventional CT.\textsuperscript{144–146} This may have significant implications in the detection of complications such as vascular perforation and hemorrhage (Figure 1.22c,d).\textsuperscript{147} Additionally, when used with image fusion software and stereotactic techniques, such systems are likely to broaden the range of therapeutic maneuvers that are available in other subspecialties in neuroradiology.

### Table 1.4 Interpretation of transcranial Doppler for vasospasm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mean MCA velocity</th>
<th>MCA:ICA ratio*</th>
<th>Interpretation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 120 cm per second</td>
<td>&lt; 3</td>
<td>Normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120–200 cm per second</td>
<td>3–6</td>
<td>Mild vasospasm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 200 cm per second</td>
<td>&gt; 6</td>
<td>Severe vasospasm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The Lindegaard ratio.

MCA, middle cerebral artery; ICA, internal cerebral artery.
While much of the information is anatomic, increasingly studies are performed to provide at least relative flow and physiologic insights. CT is widely available and offers the most rapid initial assessment. In the subacute time period (}>6 hours), MRI is extremely helpful in assessing the extent of injury as well as looking for the presence of more chronic hemorrhagic injuries. Ultrasound can be repeatedly transported into the intensive care unit for serial studies in critically ill patients. Nuclear medicine provides insights into complex conditions of cerebral ischemia. Catheter angiography provides increasingly detailed delineation of cerebral vascular anatomy in virtual real time.

**Summary**

Digital imaging techniques afford critical information for the diagnosis and management of cerebrovascular disease.
enabling minimally invasive treatments for previously incurable disease states.

References


54. Eastwood JD, Engelter ST, MacFall JF, Delong DM, Provenzale JM. Quantitative assessment of the time course of infarct signal intensity
55. Wintermark M, Thiran JP, Maeder P, Schnyder P, Meuli R. Simulta-
aneous measurement of regional cerebral blood flow by perfusion
CT and stable xenon CT: a validation study. AJNR Am J Neuroradiol
56. Fiorella D, Heiserman J, Prenger E, Partovi S. Assessment of the
Reproducibility of Postprocessing Dynamic CT Perfusion Data.
57. Mayer TE, Hamann GF, Baranczyk J et al. Dynamic CT
58. Koenig M, Klotz E, Luka B et al. Perfusion CT of the brain: a diagnos-
tic approach for early detection of ischemic stroke. Radiology 1998;
209: 85–93.
59. Koenig M, Kraus M, Thcek C et al. Quantitative assessment of the
ischemic brain by means of perfusion-related parameters derived from
60. Carr HY PE. Effects of diffusion on free precession in nuclear
magnetic resonance experiments. Physiol Rev 1954; 94: 630–80.
61. Leach MO. Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine 2003 awarded to
Paul Lauterbur and Peter Mansfield for discoveries concerning
62. Shellock FG. Reference manual for magnetic resonance safety
Research Publishing Group; 2006.
64. Heiserman J, Prenger E, Partovi S. Assessment of the
Reproducibility of Postprocessing Dynamic CT Perfusion Data.
65. Mayer TE, Hamann GF, Baranczyk J et al. Dynamic CT
66. Koenig M, Klotz E, Luka B et al. Perfusion CT of the brain: a diagnos-
tic approach for early detection of ischemic stroke. Radiology 1998;
209: 85–93.
ischemic brain by means of perfusion-related parameters derived from
68. Carr HY PE. Effects of diffusion on free precession in nuclear
magnetic resonance experiments. Physiol Rev 1954; 94: 630–80.
69. Leach MO. Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine 2003 awarded to
Paul Lauterbur and Peter Mansfield for discoveries concerning
70. Shellock FG. Reference manual for magnetic resonance safety
Research Publishing Group; 2006.
72. Heiserman J, Prenger E, Partovi S. Assessment of the
Reproducibility of Postprocessing Dynamic CT Perfusion Data.
73. Mayer TE, Hamann GF, Baranczyk J et al. Dynamic CT
74. van Heesewijk HP, Vos JA, Louwerse ES et al. New brain lesions
at MR imaging after carotid angioplasty and stent placement.
75. Jaeger HJ, Mathias KD, Drescher R et al. Diffusion-weighted MR
imaging after angioplasty or angioplasty plus stenting of arteries
76. Feiwell RJ, Besmertis L, Sarkar R, Saloner DA, Rapp JH. Detection
of clinically silent infarcts after carotid endarterectomy by use of
diffusion-weighted imaging. AJNR Am J Neuroradiol 2001; 22:
646–9.
77. Wolf O, Heider P, Heinz M et al. Frequency, clinical significance
and course of cerebral ischemic events after carotid endarterectomy
evaluated by serial diffusion weighted imaging. Eur J Vasc Endovasc
78. Ay H, Buonanno FS, Rordorf G et al. Normal diffusion-
weighted MRI during stroke-like deficits. Neurology 1999; 52:
1784–92.
79. Lefkovitz D, LaBenz M, Nudo SR, Steg RE, Bertoni JM. Hyperacute
ischemic stroke missed by diffusion-weighted imaging. AJNR Am J
80. Lovblad KO, Bassetti C, Schneider J et al. Diffusion-weighted MRI
suggests the coexistence of cytotoxic and vasogenic oedema in
a case of deep cerebral venous thrombosis. Neuroradiology 2000;
81. Koeppel FG. Reference manual for magnetic resonance safety
Research Publishing Group; 2006.
83. Heiserman J, Prenger E, Partovi S. Assessment of the
Reproducibility of Postprocessing Dynamic CT Perfusion Data.
84. Mayer TE, Hamann GF, Baranczyk J et al. Dynamic CT
85. van Heesewijk HP, Vos JA, Louwerse ES et al. New brain lesions
at MR imaging after carotid angioplasty and stent placement.
86. Jaeger HJ, Mathias KD, Drescher R et al. Diffusion-weighted MR
imaging after angioplasty or angioplasty plus stenting of arteries
87. Feiwell RJ, Besmertis L, Sarkar R, Saloner DA, Rapp JH. Detection
of clinically silent infarcts after carotid endarterectomy by use of
diffusion-weighted imaging. AJNR Am J Neuroradiol 2001; 22:
646–9.
24 Endovascular Techniques in the Management of Cerebrovascular Disease


The angiography suite: diagnostic devices and maneuvers

David Fiorella and Thomas J Masaryk

While the full digitization and post-processing of cerebral angiography has evolved in remarkable ways to create a new repertoire of therapeutic procedures, there are basic elements of the suite that have remained constant. Diligent attention to these fundamental components is required to insure safe delivery of efficacious care.

The endovascular suite: room design and radiation safety

As with many contemporary hospital endeavors, purchasing and siting a dedicated cerebral angiography suite is an inherently expensive and complex proposition. Typical competitors involved in the negotiation for resources and space will include (at a minimum) the departments of radiology, neurosurgery, anesthesia, pharmacy, central supply, nursing, and information technology. As with an operating room, the pivot points about which these accommodations are made are the location of the patient table and the anesthesia machine, gas lines, and suction. Unlike the operating room there are large, mobile, radiation-producing C-arms integral to the configuration, that pose special safety issues (particularly in the era of rotational three-dimensional angiography and flat-panel CT). Co-ordinated efforts to maximize patient access while minimizing the radiation exposure risk to personnel and patients have perhaps been best articulated for pediatric patients (for whom the stochastic effects of radiation are greater) in the form of ‘the ALARA concept’ (As Low As Reasonably Achievable) (Figure 2.1).

Radiation safety

Rationale

With the advance of endovascular techniques from surgical complement to primary treatment and the introduction of new devices more patients and healthcare workers are being exposed to ever larger doses of radiation. This has led to public expression of concern by numerous healthcare regulatory agencies within the USA.

The health hazards inherent in exposure to diagnostic X-rays are produced through the transfer of energy to tissue by indirect ionization. This process can be further subdivided into:

- photoelectric effect
- Compton effect
- coherent scattering.

Photoelectric effect (i.e. the discharge of inner shell electrons from atoms by X-rays) is useful insofar as it creates angiographic image contrast (the effect is proportional to the third power of atomic number) through ready visualization of bone or iodinated contrast. Alternatively, as this occurs with lower energy X-rays, and all of the energy is absorbed by the tissue, it is a substantial contributor to patient dose. (This effect can be minimized by maximizing the energy of the X-rays through increases in voltage, although at the expense of image contrast.)

The Compton effect describes an incident X-ray photon that loses only a fraction of its incident energy by discharging an outer shell target electron, but the X-ray continues, albeit deflected, at a lower energy. These ‘scattered’ X-Rays result in most of the radiation exposure to healthcare personnel, at energies near those of the incident photon. This can reduced by limiting the amount of X-rays used (i.e. reducing mA), but at the expense of image signal to noise.

Coherent scattering contributes a minimal amount to indirect ionization. The ionizing effects of radiation (i.e. the creation of photoelectrons or recoil electrons) lead to the formation of free radicals, which may interact with, and thus damage, tissue (notably nucleic acid base pairs). It should be noted that different tissues vary in their susceptibility to the ionizing effects of diagnostic X-rays.

Nomenclature and definitions

The effect of tissue damage created by radiation exposure can be subdivided into genetic effects (the effects created by DNA injury to normal germ cells), and somatic effects (local tissue damage and future carcinogenesis). Genetic and carcinogenic effects are often referred to as stochastic effects. Although the tissue response is clearly dose dependent, the severity of the effect is not precisely known at typical levels of exposure seen with diagnostic studies, and it is thus best described in the form of a probability.
Managing patient dose of radiation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Machine design</th>
<th>Operation of machine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exposure rate</td>
<td>Fluoroscopy time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exposure and Image</td>
<td>Number of recorded images</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total patient entrance exposure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 2.1
As Low As Reasonably Achievable (ALARA) steps to reduce radiation exposure. Reprinted with permission from Radiology.

Non-genetic, non-carcinogenic effects can be described by a dose–response relationship in which the severity beyond a threshold is known, and it is thus termed ‘deterministic’. Certain medical conditions may predispose to deterministic effects, these including diabetes mellitus, mixed connective tissue disorders, and hereditary telangiectasia.4

The word ‘kerma’ is an acronym for ‘kinetic energy released in material’, ‘kinetic energy released in matter’, or sometimes ‘kinetic energy released per unit mass’. Kerma is the sum of the initial kinetic energies of all the charged particles liberated by uncharged ionizing radiation in a sample of matter, divided by the mass of the sample. The unit for kerma is Joule per kilogram, and the name given it is the gray (Gy), where 1 Gy = 1 J/kg. The amount of ionizing radiation that exists at a position in space (e.g. the output of a fluoroscope) is defined as ‘air kerma’ and designated as Gy a. Given that radiation can be distributed over a variable region, the concentration of energy imparted to a cross-sectional area of air (air kerma multiplied by the area of the X-ray beam) is referred to as the dose–area product (DAP).

Contemporary X-ray equipment (manufactured on or after June 10, 2006) must display the operator’s air kerma rate and cumulative air kerma (equivalent to the estimated cumulative skin dose.)

The concentration of energy actually deposited in tissue, and thus of potential health consequence, is the ‘absorbed dose’. Absorbed tissue dose is likewise measured in gray but is designated Gy. For the purposes of specifying the risk of skin injury, cataract, and so on (i.e. dose to the patient), absorbed dose is the term most often used. This is often referred in with a temporal reference (e.g. Gy/hour). The absorbed dose rate in the skin from direct beam fluoroscopy is 0.02–0.05 Gy/minute, but may range from 0.01 to more than 0.5 Gy/minute depending on the fluoroscopic mode and the size of the patient. Typical concerns for patients undergoing neuroendovascular procedures include the dose to the skin as well as dose to the lens of the eye and thyroid (Table 2.1.) It is also worth noting that specific procedures (e.g. staged embolization of an arteriovenous malformation) are associated with greater exposure.45 Presently, for the purposes of quality assurance, we document the dose in each plane for every procedure, and we follow up clinically with special attention where cumulative skin exposures dose exceeds 1Gy.

‘Equivalent dose’ is the tissue dose that accounts for the different ionizing properties of other forms of radiation, and the unit of measure is the Sievert (Sv). When used in the context of gamma-radiation used for fluoroscopy and diagnostic angiography, the absorbed dose in Gy is the same quantitative value as the equivalent dose (i.e. 1 Sv = 1 Gy).

‘Effective dose’ is the quantitative value designed to account for the fact human exposure is typically non-uniform. The effective dose is that dose that would have to be given to the entire unprotected body to produce the same health effect as a non-uniform dose delivered to a specific tissue. This too is measured in Sievert or milliSievert. As noted previously, different tissues (e.g. bone marrow, neurons, gonads) have varying sensitivities to ionizing radiation. Based on recommendations of the International Commission on Radiological Protection (ICRP), different tissues are assigned weighting factors based on their inherent sensitivity to ionizing radiation.10 These weighting factors can be used to calculate equivalent whole body exposure. For regulatory and protection purposes of healthcare personnel, exposure limits are given in terms of effective dose.11 This exposure is serially monitored with film badges worn at the point of highest exposure between the waist and neck. Typical annual threshold occupational doses for healthcare workers are listed in Table 2.2.

### Table 2.1 Radiation-induced skin injuries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Dose (Gy)</th>
<th>Time to Onset</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Early transient erythema</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporary epilation</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main erythema</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>10 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permanent epilation</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>3 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry desquamation</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>4 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invasive fibrosis</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Varies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dermal atrophy</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>&gt; 14 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telangiectasis</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>&gt; 52 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moist desquamation</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Late erythema</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>6–10 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dermal necrosis</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>&gt; 10 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary ulceration</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>&gt; 6 weeks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


### Table 2.2 Annual threshold for healthcare workers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exposure area</th>
<th>Exposure limit (mSv)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deep (whole body)</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lens of eye</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shallow (skin)</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extremities</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Maneuvers to minimize risk to patients

- Monitor dose to patient. Include in quality-assurance program.
- Keep the kVp as high as possible (and mA as low as possible) to achieve the appropriate compromise between image quality and low patient dose. As kVp increases, image
The angiography suite: diagnostic devices and maneuvers

Contrast decreases. Patient dose decreases if mA is reduced, and dose to personnel in the room usually decreases.

- Keep the X-ray source as far away from the patient to minimize dose to the skin.
- Keep the image intensifier as close to the patient as possible.
- Do not overuse geometric or electronic magnification. Magnification almost always results in increased dose rate to the patient’s skin. The least magnification consistent with the goals of the procedure should be used in conjunction with collimation to manage radiation properly.
- Always collimate down to the area of interest. Applying tight collimation improves image quality by reducing scatter, lessens the radiation burden to the patient by reducing the volume of tissue exposed, and reduces dose to personnel in the room by reducing scatter.
- Minimize fluoroscopy time.
- Minimize the number of digital subtraction runs and three-dimensional rotational angiograms.

- Minimize the number of digital subtraction runs and exposures. The X-ray flux produced by full-image exposure is substantially higher than conventional fluoroscopy or roadmap fluoroscopy. This is the single largest determinant of X-ray dose for endovascular neurosurgical procedures. For complex vascular anatomy, the ability of three-dimensional rotational studies to preclude a multitude of conventional planar exposures (as well as the inherently lower dose technique) may afford a substantial dose savings.1,12

The angiography system

As noted previously, the features included in contemporary cerebral angiography systems are ever expanding. Key components and potential features that may play a role in safety, as well as in the ability to complete treatments successfully, include the patient task, the C-arms, and the host computer.

Features of the patient table to consider are:

- weight limit
- tilt (+/− degree Trendelenberg)
- break
- adaptable radiolucent head-holder.

Features of the C-Arms to consider are:

- X-Ray source
- focal spot size
- heat limit
- pulsed fluoroscopy
- X-ray detector (analog II versus digital flat panel, size (area covered), magnification steps, and spatial resolution and matrix)
- mechanization
- arc of rotation
- speed of rotation.

Maneuvers to minimize risk to personnel

- Monitor dose to staff.
- Wear protective equipment and use shielding. Lead screens, walls or curtains can be particularly helpful not only for the primary operator, but also for ancillary personnel such as the anesthesiologists (Figure 2.2).
- Distance: staff should position themselves (relative to the X-ray source) for minimum dose. The ‘inverse square law’ applies such that exposure is reduced by a factor of four for every doubling of distance from the source.
- Keep fluoroscopy time to a minimum.
- Pulsed fluoroscopy: use the least number of pulses necessary to perform the procedure – usually 15 pulses/second or less.
Features of the host computer to consider are:

- disk space
- user interface (tableside or control console)
- image recall and display (for angiography and non-angiographic studies)
- three-dimensionality
- reconstruction time
- display and interface.

**Ancillary equipment**

As the angiography suite has come to assume a greater therapeutic role in cerebral vascular disease, additional accommodations have become necessary to fulfill this role successfully. Already alluded to is the need for anesthesia gas lines, suction, and the floor space for anesthesia machines, warming and cooling devices, etc. Distributed physiologic monitoring for pulse, blood pressure, heart rhythm, oxygen saturation, and intracranial pressure are available not only to the anesthesiologist but also to the operator and in the control room (see Figure 2.2). For specific cases there may be a need for surgical instruments, electrocautery (e.g. for cut-down vascular access) or for specialized cardiovascular devices (e.g. transvenous pacemaker for high-risk carotid stenting) to be available in the room during the procedure.

There will also need to be some accommodation for a wider spectrum of pharmacologic agents and means for their safe and secure storage (see Chapter 3). Likewise, one may need point-of-service testing to facilitate patient monitoring and therapeutic titration of these agents. This type of testing may include spot serum creatinine, blood sugar, activated clotting time, and even platelet function studies. Use of such testing requires implementation of a documented quality-assurance program to ensure accuracy and precision over time.

**Diagnostic angiography devices and maneuvers**

The ability to perform and interpret a cerebral angiogram safely and successfully is a function of many variables, not the least of which are:

- a full understanding of the diagnostic goals of the study (including review of previous imaging studies)
- unique patient risk factors (allergies; previous surgery; vascular risk factors (such as smoking, diabetes, and hypertension); and medications (such as warfarin and metformin)
- the experience and training of the operator.

The last-named variable above is perhaps the most important, yet the most difficult to quantify. Although endovascular surgical neuroradiology is now a subspecialty with ACGME- and RRC-vetted training guidelines, few training programs are formally approved. Even in the context of formal instruction, objective assessment of one’s own skill set, judicious planning, conservative management, and willingness to consult colleagues and to participate in continuous quality improvement are characteristics not easily quantified by mere case log numbers.

**Catheters**

Vascular access, while occasionally creative, is most frequently performed utilizing the Seldinger technique via one of the common femoral arteries. Per Amundsen of Norway, working in San Francisco, is often credited with refining and popularizing this technique in the USA, and with good reason. It has the advantage of physically removing the operator from the X-ray beam, allowing for aggressive hemostasis (particularly in cases requiring continuous anticoagulation), and it is more easily tolerated in awake patients. The use of micro-puncture access kits for these maneuvers has greatly minimized the risk of vascular trauma and associated complications. Once obtained, vascular access can be secured with a hemostatic sheath utilizing a one-way valve with side port for pressurized anticoagulant flush solution.

In most adult patients the distance from the lower torso to the neck will necessitate diagnostic catheters (4–5F diameter) or guiding catheters for therapeutic devices (5–9F) of 90–100cm in length. These devices are made from a variety of polymers (e.g. polyurethane, PVC, polyamides, fluoropolymers) with additional enhancements to increase strength and maneuverability (braided reinforcement), increase radio-opacity, resist clotting, reduce friction, and withstand high-volume injection under considerable pressure.

To access the intracranial circulation a coaxial system that routes longer and more flexible micro-catheters (2–3F) of 150–170 cm in length through the (guide catheter) conduit from the arch is utilized. The development of variable-stiffness microcatheters represents an infrequently acknowledged, but major, milestone in the advancement of endovascular surgical neuroradiology. Use of these devises in a coaxial configuration requires meticulous attention to potential sources of emboli and the use of pressurized anticoagulant solutions (4000IU of heparin per liter), with a rotating hemostatic valve (a Tuohy–Borst adapter) to prevent retrograde accumulation of thrombus within the guide (Figure 2.3). The micro-catheters are similarly engineered for a specific purpose (aneurysm or AVM embolization) and are generally limited to hand injection of small volumes under low pressure.

The success of diagnostic and therapeutic cerebral vascular procedures is in large part predicated upon navigation of the aortic arch. In children and young adults the brachiocephalic vessels are relatively straight and aligned with the descending aorta. Under posterior–anterior fluoroscopic guidance the origins of the vessels are engaged by a subtle distal curve of the catheter, and a guiding wire (typically 0.035in in diameter) is advanced cephalad, and the catheter is then advanced by pushing or stripping the catheter over the wire. These wires are composed of a variety of metal alloys with polymeric coatings, which may limit thrombus formation and reduce friction. These are essentially visual maneuvers, not tactile. As the wire ascends the neck, location (vertebral versus carotid) may often be confirmed by noting the position relative to the lateral mass of sixth cervical vertebra and above in the oblique or lateral projections (the vertebral arteries reside within the transverse foramina at this level whereas carotid arteries lie within the soft tissue).

With age, the aorta may dilate and elongate, the net effect of which may be that the brachiocephalic origins are no longer aligned with the descending aorta, but are positioned more anterior in the mediastinum. As a consequence, cephalad catheter advancement becomes progressively more difficult as the force of stripping or pushing the catheter is no longer directed up,
In extremely difficult cases, and certainly in all cases of intracranial access, one can make use of available digital technology to facilitate catheterization. Contrast injections made in the vascular territory of interest can be recorded and superimposed over real-time fluoroscopy to provide a ‘roadmap.’ The superimposition is obviously most accurate if the patient remains motionless, a precondition best met by patients who are either remarkably cooperative or anesthetized. Even under these conditions, physiologic cardiac and respiratory motion degrade the map, a scenario obviously more problematic near the aortic arch.
The first attempts at cerebral angiography by Egaz Moniz were characterized by morbidity, mortality and little in the way of angiographic images.\(^{23}\) Although the morbidity and mortality were very likely a result of the toxicity of the crude halide solutions used as contrast material, these problems serve to emphasize the potentially devastating, and utterly irretrievable, consequences of anything less than the most meticulous technique. Studies using diffusion-weighted MRI suggest that the incidence of silent ischemic injury for diagnostic transarterial catheter studies is approximately 5–25\%.\(^{13,24–29}\) Occasionally these materials were associated with histamine release and thus the reactions were generically termed ‘allergic reactions.’ Although much less common with non-ionic agents injected intra-arterially at body temperature,\(^{32–34}\) one must be prepared for such a history and have plan for pre-medication as well as treatment of an actual untoward response.\(^{32,35–37}\) Beyond the rare idiosyncratic reactions to iodinated contrast there is often concern over the impact of these materials on renal function, particularly in patients with pre-existing compromised glomerular filtration rate or those on specific medications.\(^{36,38}\) These concerns can be addressed by minimizing dose (typically a maximum dose of 150–250 ml or 0.5 ml per kilogram of body weight), by maintaining hydration, and by alkalinization of the urine.\(^{39}\)

**Positioning**

With much of diagnostic neuroradiology now commanded by MRI and CT, and with the impressive three-dimensional angiographic displays of those non-invasive modalities, it occasionally seems that the creation of high detail cerebral vascular images is a lost art. But these modalities are static and have little of the dynamic vascular physiology displayed with catheter angiography. Similarly, they cannot match the high contrast (12 bit) or spatial resolution (2000 × 2000) of contemporary digital angiography systems.

**Standard angiographic projections and acquisition parameters**

Clearly, the limitations lie with either inexperienced or indifferent operators and technologists; however as the ‘captain of the ship’, the operator carries ultimate responsibility for optimal images. By convention, radiographic projections are named according to the direction of the X-ray beam from source to target. Standard PA and lateral digital subtraction runs are performed at 2 frames...
The canthus of the eye to the external auditory meatus (the canthomeatal line). Caldwell or Waters views can provide cranial–caudal angulation of lesions at the M1 segments of the middle cerebral arteries or those along the basilar trunk (Figures 2.9, 2.10). The Townes view is the optimal means to visualize the distal (P2, P3) posterior cerebral pial vessels (Figure 2.11). Alternatively submental vertex positioning is often an excellent means to visualize complex anatomy at the anterior communicating artery or the M1–M2 junction (Figure 2.12). Often, faithful reproduction and maximum benefit of the submental vertex view will require more than simple gantry angulation: building up of the shoulders and head extension is frequently necessary.

### Anticipating and documenting collateral pathways

The dynamic character of catheter angiography provides a unique gauge of collateral circulation to the brain. Cerebrovascular occlusions are often met with near instantaneous recruitment of alternative sources of perfusion. Anticipation of such perfusion pathways is a major key to successful diagnostic angiography and therapeutic endovascular procedures in both ischemic and hemorrhagic cerebral vascular disease. Hence, accurate angiographic documentation is crucial. (Normal vascular anatomy is outlined in Figure 2.13.)

### Table 2.3 Intravascular iodinated contrast agents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Generic name</th>
<th>Trade name</th>
<th>Iodine content (mg/ml)</th>
<th>Osmolality (mosmol/kg)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High osmolality – ionic</td>
<td>Sodium and/or methylglucamine iothalamate</td>
<td>Conray (Mallinckrodt)</td>
<td>141</td>
<td>633</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>282</td>
<td>1415</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>370</td>
<td>2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low osmolality – ionic</td>
<td>Sodium meglumine ioxaglate</td>
<td>Hexabrix (Mallinckrodt, Guerbet)</td>
<td>320</td>
<td>602</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonionic monomeric</td>
<td>Ioversol</td>
<td>Optiray (Mallinckrodt)</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>320</td>
<td>680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>350</td>
<td>702</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Iohexol</td>
<td>Omnipaque (Nycomed–Amersham)</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>520</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>300</td>
<td>672</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>350</td>
<td>844</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Iopamidol</td>
<td>Iovue (Bracco)</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>300</td>
<td>616</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>370</td>
<td>796</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Iopromide</td>
<td>Optivist (Berlex, Schering)</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>605</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>370</td>
<td>780</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ioxilan</td>
<td>Oxilan (Cook)</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>585</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>350</td>
<td>695</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Iodixanol</td>
<td>Visipaque (Nycomed–Amersham)</td>
<td>270</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>320</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Endovascular Techniques in the Management of Cerebrovascular Disease

Figure 2.6
Lateral view of the anterior circulation, center just above the ear. Correct positioning can be gauged by the degree of overlap of the orbital roofs. These structures should be parallel, but the side that is away from the detector should be larger and project above the closer side. In the preliminary run it is important to visualize the carotid siphon and the dural sinus at at least 2 frames per second to assess filling patterns, vascular anomalies, and arterial–venous circulation time. Higher frame rates will be necessary to see especially rapid arteriovenous shunting.

Figure 2.7
The AP view is performed with reference to a line drawn from the external auditory meatus to the canthus of the eye (the anatomic baseline: 0° cranial–caudal angulation). A true AP film is performed with zero angulation to this line. If positioning with fluoroscopy, one can appreciate the orbital roof aligning at the level of the petrous ridge in this position. As with the AP view, the field should be collimated for safety; however the carotid siphon, all major pial vessels, the cortical veins, and the dural sinuses should be visible. This is helpful with AVMs and most posterior circulation aneurysms.

Figure 2.8
The Caldwell view is performed by continuing the forward rotation of the image intensifier (II) to approximately 20° below the canthomeatal line. In this position the petrous ridges should appear within each orbit. It is helpful in cases of AVMs and basilar summit aneurysms.

Figure 2.9
Waters view is a continuation of the angle begun with the Caldwell view, although in this instance the petrous ridge is now in alignment with the orbital floor and the inferior orbital rim. This typically occurs with an angulations of 37°. This view may be useful in cases of middle cerebral artery and basilar terminus aneurysms.
The angiography suite: diagnostic devices and maneuvers

Figure 2.10
The SMV view is the ultimate in forward angulation of the II in the supine, AP-facing, obedient patient. This view can be facilitated by elevating the patient’s shoulders, if permitted. This view is often helpful in anterior cerebral artery and middle cerebral artery aneurysms.

Figure 2.11
The Townes view represents the reverse angulation (to the canthomeatal line) compared with those previously discussed. It is the view best for depicting distal posterior cerebral artery lesions.

Figure 2.12
Oblique view through the orbit (the Rhese view) is approximately 10° off midline and is excellent for ophthalmic, hypophyseal, posterior communication, anterior choroidal, posterior communicating and carotid terminus lesions.

Potential collateral cerebral circulation includes:

- congenital collateral circulation (e.g. persistent trigeminal or hypoglossal arteries)
- external–internal collateral circulation (e.g. facial-to-ophthalmic carotid, occipital-to-vertebral)
- circle of Willis (via communicating arteries)
- pial (watershed) collateral circulation
- iatrogenic collateral circulation (e.g. superficial temporal–middle cerebral bypass.)

Congenital deviations of the cerebral circulation are usually obvious but occasionally go unrecognized by the inexperienced operator. Pial collateral routes are often more subtle and require detailed extended filming for adequate documentation. (Figures 2.14 and 2.15.)

Manual compression of non-injected arteries

Side-to-side or front-to-back flow from the communicating arteries can be either obvious or quite subtle. They are often subtle even in the presence of large communicating arteries by virtue of the fact the flow in the circle of Willis is isobaric, and flow through the communicating vessel may be visible only in the setting of a unilateral drop in pressure. This can be facilitated by manual compression of a carotid artery: injection of the contralateral carotid artery will expose the anterior communicating artery, while injection of a dominant vertebral artery will expose the ipsilateral posterior communicating artery. This is the Allcock maneuver (Figure 2.16).41–42
Endovascular Techniques in the Management of Cerebrovascular Disease

Balloon test occlusion

In the setting of more definitive delineation of collateral support beyond mere anatomy, one can assess the ability of collateral pathways to support normal neurologic function (in anticipation of possible iatrogenic sacrifice) by temporarily occluding a vessel with the patient awake. This procedure has been variously described with much nuance and many permutations, which include some form of perfusion imaging (e.g. SPECT, xenon CT). Integral to the accuracy and success of this maneuver is the familiarity of the operator with the patient’s baseline neurological examination.

The basic principle is an extension of catheter angiography performed with bilateral vascular access. The second femoral catheterization can be used to access the vessel contemplated for sacrifice with a guide catheter (typically 6 F). Through this

**Figure 2.13**
Normal vascular anatomy summed arterial (black structures labeled in red) and venous (white structures labeled in blue) phases. a, b) AP and lateral right internal carotid injection. C1 = cervical carotid, C2 = petrous carotid, C3 = lacerum carotid, C4 = carotid siphon, C5 = clinoid carotid, C6 = ophthalmic carotid segment, C7 = communicating carotid segment. M1, M2, M3 = horizontal segment, insular segment, cortical branches of the middle cerebral artery. A1, A2 = horizontal and proximal interhemispheric anterior cerebral branches. c, d) Townes and lateral left vertebral injections. B = basilar artery, PCA = posterior cerebral artery (P1, P2, P3 segments), PICA = posterior inferior cerebellar artery, SCA = superior cerebellar artery, AICA = anterior inferior cerebellar artery. SSS = superior sagittal sinus, SS = straight sinus, SigS = sigmoid sinus, T = torcula, Tr = vein of Trolard, TS = transverse sinus, BVR = basal vein of Rosenthal, VG = vein of Galen.
The angiography suite: diagnostic devices and maneuvers

with an arterial line to accurately monitor blood pressure and every effort made to lower the patient's blood-pressure to two-thirds of the baseline mean arterial pressure for 15–20 minutes of the examination ('hypotensive challenge'). This may prove challenging, requiring impressive titration of nitrates and intravenous administration of beta-blockers. 

Despite precautions, which include hypotensive challenge or sophisticated imaging, a small percentage of patients may have false-negative examinations such that when treatment is executed and the cerebral vessel is permanently sacrificed, the patient then becomes symptomatic. In the absence of clear imaging evidence of completed infarction, this situation represents a post-operative dilemma of the worst kind. The scenario is often typified by anxious attempts to decide if the issue is one of hypoperfusion, requiring emergency surgical bypass, or if there are 'stump emboli' sent downstream of the occluded vessel by the collaterals, requiring anti-coagulation of a post-operative patient. When thoughtfully considered, this is perhaps the best rationale for careful and conservative interpretation of balloon test occlusion findings.

conduit a soft silicone balloon catheter can be placed distally while the patient is fully anticoagulated (confirmed with in-suite activated clotting time of 250–300 seconds). Potential collateral pathways are catheterized via the alternative access site (Figure 2.17). The sterile field is covered with additional drapes, and the patient’s upper extremities are freed to be visible and interactive above the drapes. The balloon is inflated, the diagnostic catheter injected and exposures acquired over the area of interest. The diagnostic catheter is withdrawn and neurological testing is conducted with the balloon inflated. If the patient develops symptoms the balloon is deflated, the patient will rapidly recover, the catheters are withdrawn, and the procedure is discontinued.

If the patient remains asymptomatic occlusion typically continues for 30 minutes with intermittent neurological testing. Often when temporary occlusion is performed in the carotid territory, the patients may become intractably hypertensive, and this may distort what is essentially a functional test of cerebral perfusion. For this reason the examination should be performed with an arterial line to accurately monitor blood pressure and every effort made to lower the patient’s blood-pressure to two-thirds of the baseline mean arterial pressure for 15–20 minutes of the examination ('hypotensive challenge'). This may prove challenging, requiring impressive titration of nitrates and intravenous administration of beta-blockers.7

Despite precautions, which include hypotensive challenge or sophisticated imaging, a small percentage of patients may have false-negative examinations such that when treatment is executed and the cerebral vessel is permanently sacrificed, the patient then becomes symptomatic. In the absence of clear imaging evidence of completed infarction, this situation represents a post-operative dilemma of the worst kind. The scenario is often typified by anxious attempts to decide if the issue is one of hypoperfusion, requiring emergency surgical bypass, or if there are 'stump emboli' sent downstream of the occluded vessel by the collaterals, requiring anti-coagulation of a post-operative patient. When thoughtfully considered, this is perhaps the best rationale for careful and conservative interpretation of balloon test occlusion findings.

Figure 2.14
Developmental collateral pathways. a, b) AP and lateral carotid injections demonstrating a persistent trigeminal artery (arrow) arising from the proximal carotid siphon. c, d) AP and lateral carotid injections demonstrating a persistent hypoglossal artery (long arrow) arising from the cervical carotid and coursing to the posterior circulation near the anterior foramen magnum. Note the incidental aneurysm (black arrow).
Figure 2.15
Acquired collateral pathways. a) Vigorous injection of the ascending pharyngeal branch of the external carotid fills ipsilateral vertebral artery (arrow). b) Vertebral artery injection with retrograde filling of the ipsilateral occipital and internal maxillary branches of the external carotid (arrow). c) Internal carotid occluded at the origin with the siphon filling via the artery of the foramen Rotundum via branches of the internal maxillary artery (arrow). d) Proximal internal carotid occlusion with intracranial supply from retrograde flow in the ophthalmic artery (arrow) reconstituted via the internal maxillary, superficial temporal and facial branches of the external carotid. e) Selective external carotid injection with flow through the inferolateral trunk and other small branches of the carotid siphon (arrows) drawn to fill a large Rolandic pial AVM.
Figure 2.15 (Continued)
Acquired collateral pathways. f) Left supra-ophthalmic carotid occlusion (arrow) with g) pial supply partially derived from an isolated right middle cerebral artery which fills the ipsilateral ACA, then the Acom, then the contralateral ACA and PCA via pial watershed anastamotic channels (arrows). h) Mid-Basilar occlusion (black arrow) with compensatory pial watershed collaterals from the inferior vermian to superior vermian brachded of the PICA to SCA respectively (red arrows).
Endovascular Techniques in the Management of Cerebrovascular Disease

Figure 2.16

(a) Lateral internal carotid injection demonstrates a focal defect arising from the suprachinoid segment, suspicious for possible posterior communicating artery aneurysm. b) Diligent angiography of the vertebrobasilar system with simultaneous manual compression of the same carotid (aka Allcock’s Maneuver) demonstrates that this defect is actually an infundibulum of the posterior communicating artery.

Figure 2.17

(a) Unsubtracted PA right carotid angiogram with a silicone balloon temporarily occluding the left internal carotid artery while the patient is fully awake and fully anticoagulated. This requires vascular access via both femoral arteries. b) Subtracted image better demonstrating collateral support via the anterior communicating artery.

References

Historically, in both surgery and interventional radiology, emphasis has always been placed on devices, instrumentation, routes of access, and means of exposure. However, in recent years there has been a growing awareness of the importance of intraprocedural pharmacology in the success of endovascular treatments for cerebrovascular disease. This chapter is an introductory primer on these critical therapeutic adjuncts.

Anticoagulants

The vast majority of neurologic complications encountered during neuroendovascular procedures are thromboembolic. This holds true whether the lesion being treated is a hemorrhagic entity (an aneurysm or an arterial-venous malformation) or a thrombotic entity (a carotid atherostenosis). Correspondingly, a successful approach to the management of coagulation is paramount for minimizing complications and maximizing the risk-benefit profile of all neuroendovascular interventions. Given the broad spectrum of disease processes addressed, multiple different regimens of anticoagulation are required. To adequately construct a rational treatment plan for each individual patient and scenario, the operator must possess a thorough knowledge of the available pharmacological agents.

Antithrombotic agents

Heparin

Unfractionated heparin is a collection of glycosaminoglycans, which range widely in molecular size and anticoagulant activity. The anticoagulant activity of heparin is derived from a pentasaccharide component with a high-affinity binding site for antithrombin III (ATIII). However, only one-third of the molecules possess this activity. Heparin binds ATIII and thrombin to form a ternary complex. The bound ATIII undergoes a conformational change that greatly enhances its ability to inactivate thrombin, factor Xa and factor IXa.

Heparin has a unique pharmacokinetic profile. Heparin is removed from the circulation by two mechanisms:

- surface receptors on endothelial cells and macrophages binding and internalizing the heparin; and
- first-order renal clearance.

Because the first mechanism can be saturated, the half-life of heparin varies with dosage, ranging from 30 minutes with a dose of 25 IU per kilogram up to 150 minutes with doses of 400 IU per kilogram. The heparin doses used in neuroendovascular therapeutics are entirely dependent on the clinical setting.

Because of the variable effects of the same heparin dose on different patients, monitoring the anticoagulant effect is ultimately more important than the recommended starting dose. After the initial dose is given, the measured effect governs further therapy. When administered in lower doses, such as those prescribed for deep venous thrombosis or acute coronary syndromes, the activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT) may be used, with the typical goal of achieving a ratio of 1.5 times the normal value. However, at higher concentrations, such as those used during angioplasty and stenting, the aPTT becomes prolonged beyond measurable levels. In these cases, an activated clotting time (ACT) is used with a target of 250–300 seconds (Figure 3.1).

Direct thrombin inhibitors

Bivalirudin

Despite a growing literature supporting the application of direct thrombin inhibitors in percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI), the application of these agents in neuroendovascular therapeutics remains limited. Currently, only bivalirudin is commercially available as an approved alternative to heparin for PCI.

Bivalirudin has a number of important therapeutic advantages:

- it acts directly on thrombin and does not require a cofactor interaction (e.g. AT-III);
- it does not bind plasma proteins and has a predictable dose–response relationship;
- it does not bind platelet factor 4 and thereby does not induce or perpetuate heparin-induced thrombocytopenia;
- it has no potential for activating platelets; and
- it binds both bound fibrin as well as fluid-phase thrombin.

Bivalirudin has a short half-life (25 minutes) in comparison with heparin. PCI studies indicate that it is at least as effective as heparin with respect to the prevention of procedural thrombosis.
and that it has a lower risk of associated peri-procedural bleeding complications.1–3 In the REPLACE-2 trial, bivalirudin was administered as a 0.75 mg per kilogram bolus followed by an at 1.75 mg per kilogram per hour infusion (with the provisional administration of a IIb–IIIa antagonist allowed). This regimen was found not to be inferior to heparin administered with a IIb–IIIa antagonist. ACTs were monitored and tended to be significantly higher in patients given bivalirudin in comparison with those given unfractionated heparin with a IIb/IIIa antagonist.7

Like heparin, bivalirudin may be used safely in conjunction with the IIb–IIIa inhibitors. In the CACHET trial, provisional abciximab therapy was required in 24% of the patients treated with bivalirudin.2 These patients experienced a 4.7% incidence of major bleeding, a rate that was no statistically different from that observed in patients receiving heparin with abciximab (6.3%).

**Antiplatelet agents**

Platelets represent the predominant component of arterial thrombi that form in response to stimuli such as endothelial injury, turbulent blood flow with associated high wall shear stress, and the introduction of an intravascular foreign body. Correspondingly, it follows that platelet inhibition represents the cornerstone of antithrombotic therapy in cerebrovascular intervention.

**Mechanism of Platelet Aggregation**

Platelets are anucleate blood cells with a tremendous capacity for interaction with their surrounding vascular environment. Platelets contain storage granules, which hold multiple chemokines, cytokines and growth factors. In addition, platelets can synthesize bioactive prostaglandins from membrane phospholipids.

In the resting state, the intact endothelium releases inhibitory factors, such as prostaglandin (PG)\(_2\)\(_A\) (= prostacyclin) and nitric oxide, which function to maintain platelets in a nonactivated state (Figure 3.2a). Following the introduction of a stimulus, a cascade of events begins that ultimately results in thrombus formation. This cascade consists of platelet adhesion, activation, secretion, and finally aggregation (see Figure 3.2). The most common and best understood stimulus is endothelial injury. However, high wall shear stress and the introduction of an intravascular foreign body both represent additional stimuli that can also activate the process of platelet aggregation.

When an endothelial injury exposes thrombogenic collagen and subendothelial matrix, platelets adhere to the injured surface primarily via the interactions between the platelet surface Ib receptor with von Willebrand’s Factor (vWF) bound to the exposed collagen (Figure 3.2b). These adherent platelets spread to form a monolayer along the surface of the injured endothelium. The adherent platelets become activated after adhesion. Endothelial injury also exposes tissue factor (TF) to the blood stream. TF is expressed exclusively by cells that are not in contact with the blood under normal circumstances (e.g. fibroblasts). Exposed TF binds factor VIIa, leading to the activation of the intrinsic and extrinsic coagulation pathways that ultimately result in thrombin formation. Thrombin, in addition to converting fibrinogen to fibrin monomers, also functions as a potent platelet agonist, resulting in further platelet activation. The activated platelets secrete additional soluble agonists including adenosine diphosphate (ADP), calcium and serotonin (5-HT), which are pre-packaged in storage granules, and the platelets synthesize and secrete thromboxane \(_A\), (TXA\(_A\)). These substances all result in the further amplification of platelet activation (Figure 3.2c). Platelet activation by this myriad of agonists results in the stimulation of multiple different intracellular signaling pathways. These pathways all ultimately converge to induce a conformational change in the platelet surface glycoprotein (GP) IIb–IIIa receptor. This conformational change converts the IIb–IIIa receptor from a quiescent, low-affinity state to an activated, high-affinity binding site for fibrinogen and vWF. The stronger platelet agonists (i.e. thrombin and collagen) also recruit additional GP IIb–IIIa receptors from the intracellular storage pool to the platelet surface.

The binding of the active platelet IIb–IIIa receptor to fibrinogen (and vWF) results in the formation of platelet–platelet and platelet–matrix adhesive interactions and the formation of stable, larger platelet aggregate at the site of injury (Figure 3.2d). While there is a significant level of redundancy built into the cascade of platelet activation, the binding of the IIb–IIIa receptor to fibrinogen (or vWF) represents the final common pathway to platelet aggregation and thus the formation of stable thrombus. As this stable platelet aggregate forms, insoluble fibrin monomers begins precipitating around the aggregated platelets and eventually become cross-linked to form a more permanent thrombus.

**Aspirin**

The initial activation of platelets results in the activation of phospholipase A\(_2\) (PLA\(_2\)), leading to the liberation of arachidonic acid (AA) from membrane phospholipids. AA is immediately converted by cyclo-oxygenase (COX)-1 to PGG\(_2\) and PGH\(_2\) and then by thromboxane synthase (TS) to thromboxane A\(_2\) (TXA\(_2\)). TXA\(_2\) is then released from the platelet to participate in a platelet-receptor-mediated positive feedback loop, which plays a critical role in the further amplification of regional platelet activation. TXA\(_2\) also functions to recruit additional platelets to the site of...

**Figure 3.1**

Hemochron Response for point of service testing of activated clotting time (ACT). (With permission from International Technidyne Corporation [ITC].)
Thrombus formation and induces local vasoconstriction. Aspirin irreversibly inactivates COX-1 through the acetylation of a serine residue at position 529, thus blocking the conversion of AA to PGG₂ and PGH₂ and ultimately therefore the production of TXA-2. Platelets lack the synthetic machinery to generate new COX-1. Therefore this inhibition of TXA-2 synthesis persists for the lifetime of the platelet. Aspirin also has effects on vascular endothelial cells, in which the blockade of COX activity inhibits the synthesis of prostacyclin, a prostaglandin that functions to decrease platelet activation. These effects are typically seen only at higher aspirin doses, at which the activity of both COX-1 and COX-2 are inhibited. This phenomenon has been termed the 'aspirin dilemma' and has led to the hypothesis that an optimal aspirin dose could provide maximal inhibition of TXA-2 synthesis with minimal disruption of the production of PGI₂. In addition, this phenomenon may explain the relatively decreased efficacy of aspirin administered in higher doses. Unlike platelets, vascular endothelial cells have the synthetic machinery to generate new COX enzyme, so the inhibition of PGI₂ synthesis is likely to be fully reversed within the interval between the once per day doses of aspirin administered for platelet inhibition.

The onset of antiplatelet activity following an oral dose of aspirin is remarkably fast. Serum levels of thromboxane B2 (a marker of TXA₂ production) are significantly reduced as early as 5 minutes after oral administration, with the maximum effect occurring within 30–60 minutes and remaining stable for 24 hours. The rapid rate of onset has been attributed to the acetylation of COX-1 in platelets within the pre-systemic portal circulation.

Aspirin has a myriad of effects in addition to its antiplatelet activity, functioning as it does as an analgesic, an antipyretic, and an anti-inflammatory. These effects all exhibit different dose–response relationships, with the lowest doses required to achieve platelet inhibition. Ex-vivo studies of platelet inhibition have
demonstrated that similar levels of inhibition can be achieved with daily aspirin doses ranging from 30 mg to 325 mg. In a large meta-analysis, the Anti-Platelet Trialists Collaboration found no evidence to support high-dose aspirin therapy. The meta-analysis demonstrated that doses of 75–150 mg (a 32% decrease), 160–325 mg (26%) and 500–1500 mg (19%) produced similar reductions in vascular events. In this same meta-analysis, doses of less than 75 mg (13%) demonstrated a significantly smaller beneficial effect. In the ASA and Carotid Endarterectomy Trial, lower doses of aspirin (81 mg or 325 mg) resulted in lower rates of stroke, death and myocardial infarction than higher dosing regimens (625–1300 mg) at 3 months.

Taken together, the available data would suggest that an aspirin dose between 81 mg and 325 mg would provide an optimal risk profile. If the lower range is to be used (i.e. 81 mg per day), the operator should consider the administration of a 160–325 mg loading dose so that a therapeutic level of antiplatelet activity can be achieved immediately.

Aspirin resistance is a significant problem that has been recognized recently as tests for the adequacy of platelet blockade have become more available (see below). Between 5 and 40% of patients are resistant to the antiplatelet effects of standard doses of aspirin. The incidence of aspirin resistance has been found to be related to aspirin dose, with 56% resistance observed at an 81 mg daily dose and 28% resistance at a 325 mg dose. The same authors reported that 65% of patients taking enteric-coated aspirin had normal platelet function tests. In addition, aspirin resistance may progressively develop over time with long-term therapy. Pulcinelli et al. observed a significant reduction in platelet sensitivity to aspirin therapy over a 24-month period.

A growing volume of data suggests that aspirin resistance has significant clinical implications. Gum et al. reported a three times higher risk of death, myocardial infarction, and cerebrovascular accident over an approximately 2-year period. Chen et al. found that aspirin-resistant patients had a three times greater risk of having creatine kinase-MB elevations following non-emergent percutaneous coronary intervention. In patients with a previous stroke, those with aspirin resistance were 89% more likely to have a recurrent cerebrovascular accident within 2 years. After peripheral intervention, an increase in arterial re-occlusion has been observed in a cohort of aspirin non-responders. Although no studies currently exist, similar implications should be anticipated for neuroendovascular patients undergoing procedures requiring stent deployment or angioplasty. A knowledge of previous aspirin resistance could have a significant impact on the treatment plan, particularly in those cases in which other reasonable therapeutic options exist (e.g. carotid endarterectomy versus carotid stenting, balloon assisted versus stent-assisted aneurysm embolization). This is the rationale for pre- and intra-procedure monitoring of platelet function.

Thienopyridines (Clopidogrel)

Clopidogrel and ticlopidine are the two commercially available thiopyridines that have been routinely used as antiplatelet agents. Both agents have no activity in vitro, as because they require hepatic transformation to active metabolites, which mediate the antiplatelet effect. The active metabolites irreversibly inhibit ADP from binding to its platelet surface P2Y12 receptor. This blockade prevents the soluble platelet agonist ADP from stimulating activation of the intracellular second-messenger (adenylate cyclase) system, which functions to amplify regional platelet activation by stimulating secretion and ultimately modulates the conversion of the GP IIb–IIIa receptor to its high-affinity state.

Ticlopidine usage has declined substantially over the past decade, owing to the associated side-effect of bone marrow depression, with neutropenia occurring in 2.4% of patients, and the emergence of clopidogrel as an adequate substitute. In CLASSICS (a direct comparison of ticlopidine and clopidogrel administered in combination with aspirin), clopidogrel demonstrated a superior safety profile and comparable efficacy in preventing thrombotic complications after coronary stenting. Studies of the pharmacokinetics of both agents indicate that clopidogrel also demonstrates a prompter onset of maximal platelet inhibition in comparison with ticlopidine. Currently, the use of ticlopidine is largely restricted to patients who are intolerant of clopidogrel. For this reason, the remainder of this section focuses on the pharmacology of clopidogrel.

Clopidogrel is rapidly absorbed and quickly metabolized, with very low plasma concentrations of the drug measured in patients on daily therapy. The active metabolites produce an irreversible alteration of the ADP binding site, and subsequently the effect persists for the duration of the platelet’s lifespan, with 7 days required for return of normal platelet function after therapeutic levels are have been attained.

The time required to establish maximally therapeutic levels of platelet inhibition with clopidogrel is dependent on the dosing regimen employed. If a standard daily dose of 75 mg is administered without a loading dose, only 25–30% inhibition at 48 hours. An average of 5 days (range of 3–7 days) is required to achieve maximal steady state levels (50–60%) of platelet inhibition at this dose. However, if a loading dose (300–600 mg) is administered, maximal levels of inhibition are achieved within 2–6 hours and remain relatively stable for up to 48 hours. In the CREDO study, patients who received the 300 mg loading dose of clopidogrel 6 hours or more before their procedure had a 38.6% reduction in death, myocardial infarction or urgent target vessel revascularization at 1 month, whereas no benefit was observed in patients receiving the loading dose before the 6 hour time point.

The efficacy of clopidogrel differs between patients, with a significant incidence of resistance described in the literature. Unlike aspirin, clopidogrel resistance has been classified as both a binary and a graded phenomenon by different investigators. Resistance is measured by determining the degree of reduction in ADP-induced platelet aggregation. Gurbel et al. observed resistance in 31% of patients at 24 hours and 5 days, decreasing to 15% at 30 days, following a 300 mg loading dose of clopidogrel and a dose of 75 mg per day dose after that. When resistant patients were subcategorized, Muller et al. reported that 5–11% were non-responders and 9–26% were semi-responders, depending on the dose of ADP employed to stimulate platelet aggregation. Lau et al. reported rates of clopidogrel resistance in 22% of patients and 16% of volunteers, with an additional 23% of patients and 12% of volunteers categorized as ‘low’ responders.

As with aspirin, clopidogrel resistance has been demonstrated to have significant clinical implications. For example, individual variability in response to clopidogrel in the setting of percutaneous coronary intervention after myocardial infarction was found to predict an increased risk of recurrent cardiovascular events. Unlike aspirin, clopidogrel resistance does not appear to develop with time. Thus, if a patient is confirmed to be responsive to clopidogrel initially, a durable antiplatelet effect can be anticipated with long-term administration.
Therapeutic options: pharmacology

**Glycoprotein IIb–IIIa inhibitors**

The IIb–IIIa inhibitors block platelet aggregation by preventing fibrinogen and other adhesion molecules such as vWF from binding to the IIb–IIIa integrin on platelets. There are two general classes of antagonists: the irreversible antagonist, abciximab, and the reversible antagonists, eptifibatide and tirofiban.

Abciximab is a monoclonal antibody that binds irreversibly to the IIb–IIIa receptor at the beta-chain of the integrin. Eptifibatide and tirofiban are peptides that mimic the naturally occurring arginine–glycine–aspartic acid (RGD) sequence, which is avidly bound by the IIb–IIIa receptor. This RGD binding site mediates the binding of vWF, vitronectin, fibronectin, and fibrinogen to platelets. Eptifibatide and tirofiban compete with these factors for binding at the RGD site, functioning as reversible, competitive inhibitors.

**Figure 3.4**

Accumetrics ‘Verify Now’ point-of-service testing for platelet function. This device has separate cartridges, which test for sensitivity to IIb–IIIa inhibitors, aspirin, and clopidigrel. (With permission from Accumetrics.)

**Figure 3.3**

Points of attack of various platelet inhibitors: aspirin, thienopyridines, and IIb–IIIa inhibitors. Because their mechanisms of action are different, the effects of each class of drug are believed to be additive. ADP, adenosine diphosphate, TXA-2, thromboxane A2.

**Figure 3.5**

Medical bracelet reinforcing the importance of dual antiplatelet therapy in patients in whom a cerebral stent has been placed.

account for the added benefit observed when clopidogrel is added to supplement long-term aspirin therapy (see below).

The mechanisms of clopidogrel resistance are incompletely understood. The leading hypothesis is that individual differences in hepatic metabolism result in variable rates of conversion of the clopidogrel to its active metabolite.

As with aspirin, platelet inhibition by the thienopyridines is durable for the lifetime of the platelet. Platelet function gradually returns to normal, via platelet turnover, over a period of 7 days after the last dose of clopidogrel is administered. (Correspondingly, immediate reversal can be achieved only with a platelet transfusion.) In an effort to ensure patient compliance and reduce delayed thromboembolic effects, patients requiring oral platelet inhibition following intervention are encouraged to wear a medical bracelet (Figure 3.5).
inhibitors of the IIb–IIIa receptor. By eliminating the function of the IIb–IIIa receptor, these agents block the final common pathway of platelet function and platelet aggregation. At approximately 80% IIb–IIIa receptor blockade, platelet aggregation is nearly completely abolished, and at levels greater than 90%, platelet function is ablated to the point that bleeding times become markedly elevated.32

In addition to its effects at the platelet IIb–IIIa receptor, abciximab also binds to the vitronectin receptor (on vascular smooth muscle and endothelial cells) and the integrin MAC1 (on activated neutrophils and monocytes). The consequences of these additional receptor interactions remain to be elucidated; however, some researchers have hypothesized that these interactions may play a role in decreasing the inflammatory reaction that follows angioplasty and stenting, thus limiting subsequent intimal hyperplasia.

All three IIb–IIIa inhibitors have the potential to induce thrombocytopenia. This occurs at a slightly higher rate with abciximab (up to 6.3%) than with the competitive antagonists.33

Thrombocytopenia induced by IIb–IIIa inhibitors is usually quickly reversed by stopping the drug. Typically, a complete recovery evolves over several days.

Abciximab

Abciximab, a monoclonal antibody, is a large molecule with very high affinity for platelet IIb–IIIa receptors. Correspondingly, the plasma half-life of the free drug is short, approximately 10 minutes, as the agent binds immediately to circulating platelets. The agent not bound to platelet receptors is quickly cleared from the circulation. Once bound to platelets, the dissociation time is very long and the molecule remains biologically active on the surface of platelets for 12–14 hours. These characteristics result in a rapid onset of action and a slow reversal of activity after cessation of administration.34 After the administration of a bolus and an infusion of abciximab, 28% occupation of the IIb–IIIa receptors is sustained at 8 days, declining to 13% at 15 days.

Abciximab is typically administered as a loading dose of 0.25 mg per kilogram, followed by an infusion at 0.125 mg per kilogram per minute (maximum 10 μg per minute) for 12 hours.35 If the bolus is given alone, bleeding times and platelet function recover to near-normal values by 12 hours, with platelet aggregation returning to greater than 50% of baseline within 24–48 hours in almost all patients. If the infusion is administered, platelet inactivation is maintained throughout the duration of the infusion.

Eptifibatide and tirofiban

Eptifibatide, a synthetic peptide, is a structural analog of barbourin, a snake venom disintegrin polypeptide. Tirofiban is a non-peptide tyrosin derivative that is also based on the structure of a known disintegrin polypeptide. These agents have less affinity than abciximab for the IIb–IIIa receptor and their binding to the receptor is reversible.36 Eptifibatide, in particular, is a low-affinity agonist for the IIb–IIIa receptor. Both compounds demonstrate a very rapid dissociation (in seconds) from the receptor. Correspondingly, after cessation of administration, platelet function returns rapidly to normal. Both agents are cleared through the kidneys and, as such, the effects of these agents may persist for longer in patients with renal failure. The plasma half-time of both agents is approximately 1.5 hours in patients with normal renal function.

When IIb–IIIa receptor inhibitors are used in conjunction with heparin, the dose of heparin should be decreased (50–70 IU/kg) slightly, as the existing literature indicates an increased risk of bleeding without a significantly increased efficacy.39,40

The therapeutic window for these agents is narrow, as the occupation of approximately 80% of IIb–IIIa receptors is required for clinically effective inhibition of platelet aggregation, however, greater than 90% inhibition may result in excessive bleeding complications.35 The number of platelet receptors available for binding varies with the relative state of platelet activation.41 In addition, the actual platelet counts and consequently the number of receptors vary quite substantially across patients.42 As such, determining a universal dose of IIb–IIIa inhibitors is challenging.

In a study directly comparing the efficacy of all three IIb–IIIa inhibitors in the setting of high-risk PCI, it was determined that only 52% of patients achieved targeted levels of platelet inhibition after administration of the recommended bolus dose of IIb–IIIa inhibitor (41%, 66%, and 49% with tirofiban, eptifibatide and abciximab, respectively). The remaining 48% of patients required a second half-bolus to achieve the target levels.43 In the GOLD study,44 25% of all patients administered the recommended bolus doses of IIb–IIIa inhibitors did not achieve adequate platelet inhibition and experienced a significantly higher incidence of adverse cardiac events.

Thus, as with aspirin and the thiopyridines, there is substantial variability in the level of platelet function inhibition achieved with standard regimens of GP IIb–IIIa antagonist therapy, and the level of platelet function inhibition is an independent predictor for the risk of complications during PCI.

Abciximab has a protracted duration of action and, as such, reversal requires platelet transfusion. The antiplatelet effects of the competitive antagonists will abate over a relatively short period of time if the infusion is discontinued. While platelet transfusions will hasten the return of normal function, they are less effective in this setting, as the competitive antagonists have a
very short dissociation time and maintain higher plasma concentrations. Fibrinogen supplementation, in the form of cryoprecipitate or fresh frozen plasma, represents a useful means by which to achieve reversal of these agents. The increasing concentration of fibrinogen tips the balance of competition at the IIb–IIIa receptor in the favor of fibrinogen, counteracting the effects of the circulating IIb/IIIa inhibitors.46

In a direct comparison, abciximab was superior to tirofiban for the prevention of ischemic events after percutaneous coronary angiography (PTCA).46 However, in a comparison of all three agents in high risk patients undergoing PTCA, no difference in major cardiac events was detected at 30 days.46

Thrombolitics

Thrombolytic agents function by converting plasminogen (which is inactive) to plasmin. Plasmin functions to cleave fibrin enzymatically, fibrin being the primarily constituent of clot. These agents fall into two general categories:

- fibrin-specific agents – alteplase (rt-PA), reteplase (r-PA), and tenecteplase (TNK); those which preferentially activate fibrin-bound plasminogen; and
- non-fibrin-specific agents – urokinase (UK) and streptokinase (SK); which non-specifically activate plasminogen.

The fibrin-specific agents, primarily rt-PA, are preferred in neuroendovascular therapeutics. The remainder of this section pertains to rt-PA.

Alteplase

rt-PA has a relatively short half-life, requiring a bolus and continuous infusion technique to maintain steady-state plasma concentrations. The plasma concentrations decrease in a biphasic pattern, which is dominated by a very short alpha-phase half-life (3.5 minutes). The beta-phase is somewhat longer, at 72 minutes. Despite the rapid clearance of the agent from plasma, rt-PA induces a fibrinolytic state, which persists for hours in the region of the thrombus. Measurable elevations of fibrin degradation products and peripheral markers of plasmin activity remain elevated for more than 7 hours after the initiation of rt-PA therapy.46,47 This is attributable to the continued activity of both fibrin-bound rt-PA and plasmin long after measurable rt-PA is cleared from the systemic circulation.

rt-PA dosing is covered in more detail in Chapter 5. While there is no officially recommended dosing for intra-arterial therapy, doses of up to 40 mg have been used.46 The tendency is to use much lower doses for direct intra-arterial stroke therapy, ranging between 2 mg and 15 mg. In most cases rt-PA is administered in conjunction with small doses of intra-arterial abciximab (2–10 mg). The synergistic combination of the two agents is supported by the coronary thrombolysis literature46 as well as by observations during intra-arterial stroke thrombolysis.46,51 If intra-arterial pharmacological thrombolysis is anticipated or if intravenous thrombolysis has already been initiated, half of the typical heparin dose is given (30–40 IU/kg) as a bolus after femoral access is achieved. In cases where intravenous lytic therapy has been initiated in the interim before neuroendovascular intervention, we generally have stopped the intravenous rt-PA infusion while the patient is being prepped for angiography and the table is being prepared.

rt-PA may also be administered as a continuous infusion in cases of venous sinus thrombosis. In these cases, the infusion is typically preceded by catheterization of the occluded sinus with subsequent mechanical or rheolytic thrombolysis and/or local pharmacological thrombolysis (1–2 mg aliquots delivered through the microcatheter directly into the clotted sinus, up to a total of 10 mg rt-PA). We then prepare a solution of 1–5 mg rt-PA per 10 ml of normal saline and run the infusion through a microcatheter hooked up to an infusion pump at a rate of 1–5 mg per hour for 12–24 hours, with control angiography performed after at least 12 hours of therapy. During the infusion, therapeutic heparinization is maintained (aiming at an aPTT 1.5 times normal).32

Vasodilators

The vasodilators are primarily applied during neuroendovascular interventions for medically refractory cerebral vasospasm involving segments of the cerebrovasculature that are not amenable to compliant balloon angioplasty. Occasionally, these agents are also required for the treatment of persistent or severe catheter-induced vasospasm.

Nimodipine, a calcium-channel blocker, is prophylactically administered orally to patients after subarachnoid hemorrhage to decrease the risk of cerebral vasospasm.

Papaverine

Papaverine is a benzylisoquinolone derivative of opium. It functions as a vasodilator, probably via the inhibition of phosphodiesterase. Since the early 1990s, papaverine infusions have been employed as a treatment for cerebral vasospasm after aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage, with varying degrees of success. When effective, the vasodilatory effects of papaverine are typically short-lived, often lasting less than a few hours.52,53 During the intra-arterial infusion, intracranial pressure (ICP) monitoring is essential, as the agent may produce significant elevations in ICP.50 Recently Smith et al.50 have documented a direct neurotoxic effect of papaverine. For these reasons, we have completely abandoned papaverine as an agent for the management of cerebral vasospasm in favor of the calcium-channel blocker nicardipine (see below).

Calcium-channel blockers

There are five major classes of calcium channel blockers:

- benzoazepines (diltiazem)
- dihydropyridines (nicardipine, nifedipine, nimodipine)
- phenylalkylamines (verapamil)
- diarylamino propylamine ethers (bepridil)
- benzimidazole-substituted tetralines (midefradil).

Three of these agents – nicardipine, nimodipine and verapamil – are applied frequently in neuroendovascular therapeutics.
All of the calcium-channel blockers decrease coronary vascular resistance and increase coronary blood flow, decrease peripheral vascular resistance via vasodilatation of arterioles, and are without significant effect on venous tone at normal doses. The relative inotropic and chronotropic effects of the different classes of calcium-channel blockers are related to the class of calcium channels that they block. Negative inotropic effects dominate in those agents that preferentially block L-type channels. Dihydropyridines (nimodipine and nicardipine) have minimal negative inotropic effects and do not directly affect the atrioventricular (AV) conduction system or the sinoatrial (SA) node (and therefore do not affect conduction or automaticity). In fact, these agents may cause a reflex tachycardia in response to their potent vasodilating effects. In addition, any weak negative inotropic effects that these agents may possess are overcome by the reflex sympathetic response that they engender. Overall, they typically produce a drop in blood pressure, an increase in heart rate and contractility, and an increase in cardiac output.

Verapamil, in comparison to the dihydropyridines, has greater negative chronotropic and inotropic effects and also slows cardiac conduction. The effects of the drug are generally more than sufficient to overcome the reflex sympathetic response stimulated by peripheral vasodilation, resulting in a lower blood pressure and lower heart rate. The negative inotropic effects may be particularly important in patients with underlying left ventricular dysfunction either from 'cardiac stunning' (frequently seen in the setting of aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage) or ischemic coronary disease. In addition, verapamil is specifically contraindicated in combination with beta-blockers, or in patients with SA node or AV conduction abnormalities because of the possibility of AV block or severe ventricular dysfunction. For these reasons, we have chosen not to use verapamil for the treatment of cerebral vasospasm.

In addition to having a favorable cardiac pharmacological profile, the dihydropyridines (whether administered orally or intravenously) have been shown to reduce delayed ischemic injury after subarachnoid hemorrhage. Intravenous nicardipine has been demonstrated to have efficacy as a prophylactic agent for the prevention of angiographic and clinical vasospasm. Nimodipine (60 mg orally every 4 hours) has been demonstrated to improve patient outcome at 3 months. One meta-analysis demonstrated a 27% relative risk reduction (95% CI, 13–39%) with only 13 patients (8–30) needing to be treated with oral nimodipine to avoid one poor outcome.

Nicardipine is metabolized primarily by the liver, with a half-life of approximately 3–4 hours. Drug levels can be significantly prolonged in patients with challenged liver function.

For catheter-induced vasospasm, nicardipine (10 mg in 25 ml) may be diluted in sterile water to a concentration of 0.25–0.5 mg/ml. A dose of 2–3 mg can be administered through the guiding catheter over 5 minutes. Typically this results in complete resolution of catheter-induced spasm, and it the resolution is usually maintained throughout the case.

For cerebral vasospasm, nicardipine is diluted in normal saline to a concentration of 0.1–0.2 mg/ml and administered through a diagnostic catheter, a guiding catheter or a microcatheter at a rate of 3–6 mg over 10 minutes using a mechanical power injector. After each 10-minute infusion, control angiography is performed. Additional infusions are performed (as tolerated by the patient’s hemodynamic status) until angiographic resolution of vasospasm is achieved. In our experience, the primary limiting factor is the induction of hypotension. To counter this, we routinely begin a phenylephrine drip simultaneously with the nicardipine infusion, titrating the drip to maintain the mean arterial pressure. We have administered up to 27 mg of nicardipine into a single vascular distribution during one session.

Preliminary experience with nicardipine has been favorable with respect to its efficacy in producing angiographic improvement in cerebral vasospasm. However, the durability of the observed effects and its impact on patient outcome remain unknown.

Nitroglycerine

Nitroglycerine, a paste preparation, represents an inexpensive, readily accessible, and relatively efficacious means by which to treat catheter-induced vasospasm. In the setting of spasm, 2.5–5.0 cm of topical nitropaste can be applied to the patient’s chest. This is often effective in resolving the spasm. However, it is critical that the operator remembers to remove the nitropaste at the conclusion of the intervention.

Neuroprotective agents

Despite extensive translational research, currently no pharmacological agents have been proven effective for peri-procedural neuroprotection. While hypothermia has been demonstrated to improve neurological outcome after cardiac arrest and perinatal asphyxia, no beneficial effect has been demonstrated during aneurysm surgery. Some studies have suggested a beneficial effect of barbiturates, but other studies have indicated no benefit. Although the evidence for a beneficial effect of barbiturates is conflicting, there is general agreement that the application of these agents results in myocardial depression, increased need for vasopressors, and prolonged time to tracheal extubation. Several animal studies have suggested that propofol, which has a superior pharmacologic profile to barbiturates, may also have additional, unique neuroprotective properties. However, these benefits were not manifest in a human investigation of neurological outcomes after open cardiac surgery.

Encouraging pre-clinical data exist for the alpha-2 adrenoceptor agonist dexmedetomidine; however, it has yet to be tested clinically.

Statins

Statins are among the most commonly prescribed medications, ranking second after hydrocodone. Statins are competitive inhibitors of 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl coenzyme A (HMG-CoA) reductase, which catalyzes an early, rate-limiting step in cholesterol biosynthesis. Decreased cholesterol synthesis in the liver results in increased expression of the low-density lipoprotein (LDL) receptor gene. The greater number of LDL receptors on the surface of hepatocytes results in increased removal of LDL from the blood, thereby lowering the LDL-cholesterol levels. Although the most pronounced effect of the statins is reduction of LDL cholesterol, there is also a reduction in the cholesterol content of very low-density lipoprotein particles, while high-density lipoprotein cholesterol may increase slightly. As a result, statins are the most effective and best tolerated agents available for treating dyslipidemias.
Statin pleiotropy is defined as the effects of statin therapy that extend beyond lipid modification and are independent of reduction in levels of LDL cholesterol.21–26 These pleiotropic effects may be mediated through improving or restoring endothelial function, enhancing the stability of atherosclerotic plaques, and decreasing oxidative stress and vascular inflammation.27 These effects are reported as directly benefiting coronary and cerebrovascular tissue, bone, and kidney and glucose metabolism, and decreasing the incidence of dementia, allograft rejection, and osteoporosis.

Statin and biventricular heart failure: New insights. The effects of statins are not limited to their lipid-lowering properties. Statins are known to improve endothelial function, decrease inflammation, and reduce the risk of cardiovascular events. This is due to their pleiotropic effects, which include lowering inflammation, improving insulin resistance, and reducing the risk of atherosclerosis.

In conclusion, statins are an effective treatment for the prevention and management of cardiovascular disease. Their benefits include reducing the risk of heart attack, stroke, and death. However, they should be prescribed with caution due to potential side effects such as muscle pain, liver function tests, and kidney function tests. Regular monitoring of these tests is essential to ensure that the benefits of statins outweigh the risks. Further research is needed to fully understand the mechanisms by which statins exert their pleiotropic effects.

References


31. Gurbel PA, Blijden KP. Durability of platelet inhibition by clopi


44. Li YF, Spencer FA, Becker RC. Comparative efficacy of fibrinogen and platelet supplementation on the in vitro reversibility of competitive glycoprotein IIb/IIIa receptor-directed platelet inhibition. Am Heart J 2002; 143: 725–32.


Embolic agents and materials, stents, delivery systems, and retrieval devices

David Fiorella and Raymond D Turner IV

The field of endovascular surgical neuroradiology is predicated upon the development of minimally invasive techniques and implantable devices. While freely borrowing from the fields of cardiology and interventional radiology, the seminal innovation of devices and procedures for specific neurological disorders has been in many ways the defining milestone of the specialty; certainly Serbinenko’s detachable balloons, Engleson’s variable stiffness microcatheter, and the Guglielmi detachable coil system rank among them. Less conspicuous, but no less influential, has been the role of the government regulatory agencies charged with ensuring the safety and efficacy of such products.

In the USA, regulatory oversight is provided by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA). The FDA is a dynamic organization, which continually changes and adapts to the vagaries of politics, public opinion, the marketplace, and the technological and scientific advances in healthcare. The FDA possesses federal authority to regulate medical devices via the secretary of the Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS), a cabinet-level position within the executive branch of government. There is also legislative oversight via the Senate and House of Representatives, as well as judicial checks and balances, via the Department of Justice, in the US attorneys.

The FDA came into being with the Food and Drug Act of 1906, primarily in response to public outcry over contaminated food. In 1938, the Food and Drug Act was amended, mentioning for the first time oversight of medical devices. Nevertheless, this legislation focused primarily on pharmaceuticals and thus had numerous shortcomings and limitations. A major regulatory watershed came with the passage of the Medical Devices Amendment of 1976 (coincidentally, this was about the time that Serbinenko began using balloons to treat cerebrovascular disease). This amendment clearly defined oversight for new or high-risk medical devices and it attempted to ‘grandfather’ those known to be safe and efficacious by previous experience. With the passage of this amendment, the FDA was charged with categorizing all medical devices into a three-tier classification and regulatory system on the basis of their risk. It specified two types of pre-marketing procedures for ‘approval.’ A detailed submission, called a pre-market approval (PMA) was implemented for new and high-risk devices. A less thorough submission was implemented for devices that were substantially equivalent to those marketed before the amendment (and deemed safe). This submission was called a pre-market notification, or ‘510(K)’ in reference to the section of the Act specifying this approach.

Another milestone came with the Medical Devices Act of 1990, which was primarily concerned with user and manufacturer medical device reporting and with post-marketing surveillance and tracking for safety.

The FDA’s Center for Devices and Radiological Health has primary responsibility for regulating medical devices. As noted above, the Center divides these into three classes (the higher the class, the higher the risk): 7

- **class I** – those devices that do not support human life, and are not important in preventing impairment of human health, and do not pose significant risk of illness or injury. Examples would include dental filling, daily-wear contact lenses, and tongue depressors. These devices are regulated by ‘general controls’, which are primarily post-marketing and meant to ensure safety, purity, and accurate labeling.

- **class II** – those devices that require performance standards to assure safety and efficacy for the intended use, as well as standards for the manufacturing and operation of the device. In addition to general controls of class I, these devices are also subject to ‘special controls’ concerned with performance and design standards, post-market surveillance, patient registries, guidelines, and other actions. Examples would include lead wires and cables to medical devices.

- **class III** – those devices with potential for serious risk to health, safety, and welfare and are intended as an implant, used in sustaining or supporting human life, or are of substantial importance in diagnosing, curing, mitigating, or treating disease or preventing impaired health.

Commercial interstate marketing and sale of medical devices in the USA typically involves successful 510(K) or PMA. However, medical devices may also be obtained for use with an investigational device exemption (IDE), humanitarian device exemption (HDE) – custom device and emergency device mechanisms prior to any approval. These latter mechanisms are highly regulated to ensure patient safety with strict oversight by an independent Investigational Review Board under guidelines established by the FDA and the DHHS. Key to this process is intimate familiarity with state and local common law regarding informed consent standards (which may vary). If a device is already approved for another marketplace indication but is used in a non-approved fashion, this may be acceptable medical practice (assuming this use is not marketed). This is termed ‘off-label’ use, and it should
be employed when such practice is widely recognized in the specialty, and the operator is trained and familiar with the use as well as its limitations. Informed consent may also be an issue in these cases, although it may be reasonable to assume the ‘prudent patient doctrine.’ Much more detailed discussions of these complex topics may be found in the bibliography references at the end of this chapter.7–9,13–17

This chapter is not meant to be a compendium of neuroendovascular devices, rather it is meant as a broad overview, with special attention focusing on implantable, therapeutic devices. The use of guide catheters, sheaths, connectors, torque devices, and the like, (while the basic substrate and foundation of cerebral endovascular access) is often defined by training, familiarity, and subjective impressions of success (not to mention luck), and they are thus excluded from this discussion.

Liquid embolic agents

Liquid embolic agents are primarily used for the embolization of arterial–venous shunts [arterial–venous malformations (AVMs) and dural arteriovenous fistulae (dAVF)]. On occasion, these agents can be employed for tumor embolization as well.18

Cyanoacrylates

These liquid adhesive polymer agents offer several important advantages:

- they have the potential for penetration deep into an AVM nidus, as well the potential for transarterial-to-venous pouch penetration for a dAVF.
- they can achieve permanent embolization with durable occlusion of the vessel or pedicle being embolized.
- they can be delivered through small, flexible, flow-directed catheters, which can be safely and atraumatically manipulated into the most distal and tortuous locations within the cerebral vasculature.
- they can be easily and quickly delivered into the pedicle, with infusions generally requiring less than 1 minute (unlike particulate embolization, which can require numerous prolonged injections from a given catheter position).

Several different polymers have been employed. The first agent available was iso-butyl-2-cyanoacrylate (IBCA): however, this was discontinued after studies demonstrated that it possessed some carcinogenic potential in animals. Currently, n-butyl-cyanoacrylate (nBCA) (Cordis Neurovascular, Miami Lakes, Florida) is the cyanoacrylate of choice for AVM embolization.

These agents are introduced as liquid monomers that subsequently polymerize to form a stable solid when they come into contact with a solution that contains anions, such as the hydroxyl groups in blood. The rate of polymerization and the rate of injection determine how far the agent will travel within the cerebral vasculature before solidifying. nBCA itself is radiolucent and must be mixed with a radio-opaque agent, typically ethiodized oil (e.g., lipiodol, ethiodol) – we employ a 1:5:1–3:1 oil–nBCA mixture for most applications (Figure 4.1). In addition to imparting radio-opacity to the nBCA, the oil acts as a retardant, slowing the rate of polymerization and acting to allow the nBCA to travel further in the vessel before solidifying. Several investigators have observed that increasing the volume of ethiodized oil increases the time to polymerization.18,20 Glacial acetic acid may also be added in small quantities to the mixture to retard further the rate of polymerization.21

nBCA is, for all intents and purposes, a permanent embolic agent. Once solidified, the cyanoacrylates (if a sufficient volume has been injected) create an immediate occlusion of the embolized pedicle. An intense inflammatory reaction follows, which leads to fibrous in-growth, which in turn produces a durable occlusion.22 Although recanalization can occur, it is rare after an adequate embolization.

Disadvantages of the liquid adhesives include:

- the high level of expertise required to control safely the injection in order to achieve adequate nidal penetration without allowing the agent to extend into the vein; and
- the risk of nBCA adhering to the catheter, making withdrawal traumatic or impossible.

Ethylene-vinyl alcohol copolymer in dimethyl sulfoxide solvent

Ethylene-vinyl alcohol (EVOH) is a polymeric agent recently approved by the FDA for the preoperative embolization of brain
Embolic agents and materials, stents, delivery systems, and retrieval devices

AVMs (EV3 Neurovascular, Irvine, California). EVOH is an insoluble co-polymer, which is dissolved in dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) to form a viscous suspension (Onyx). After the DMSO solvent dissipates from the solution, the EVOH precipitates to form a coherent embolus.

As a liquid embolic agent, EVOH is in many respects similar to nBCA. However, EVOH is non-adhesive, reducing the possibility of the catheter adhering to the injected polymer. This allows the operator a much greater degree of flexibility with respect to the volume and rate of the injection. The operator may even temporarily halt an EVOH–DMSO infusion in progress to perform control angiography and assess the status of the AVM nidus and draining veins before continuing the infusion. In addition, the behavior of the agent during the injection is vastly superior to that of nBCA. The EVOH precipitates from the outside in, forming a ‘skin’ around the outside of a centrally liquid core (Figure 4.2a). This phenomenon allows the continued forward flow of the embolic agent after an initially occlusive proximal cast is created. The ‘plug-and-push’ technique takes advantage of this property of EVOH. After reflux is observed, the infusion may be temporarily suspended for 30 seconds and then resumed. Not infrequently, the agent will then progress through the fluid center of the pre-existing, proximally occlusive embolic cast to penetrate antegrade further into the AVM nidus. Using this technique, very large volumes of the agent (>1 ml) can be routinely infused safely into the AVM nidus, yielding much deeper nidal penetration and much more complete occlusion of the AVM nidus.

Two different preparations of Onyx are commercially available in the USA, Onyx-18 and Onyx-34, to accommodate differences in pedicle flow characteristics. The Onyx-18 preparation is less viscous and is recommended for most injections. The Onyx-34 is more viscous and is recommended for high-flow pedicles and fistulae. A third, yet more viscous, preparation has been developed for treatment of aneurysms, but is not yet widely available.

Initial studies demonstrated that the DMSO component of the mixture induced vasospasm and angionecrosis. Subsequent investigations indicated that these effects could be largely eliminated by limiting the volume of DMSO injected and limiting the rate at which it was introduced. Jahan et al. did report one complication (proximal reflux) related to distal vasospasm that developed during an injection. To avoid problems with spasm, Onyx is injected at a slow, steady rate of approximately 0.15 ml per minute. In addition, the total volume of DMSO used to purge the catheter before the injection should be limited to the dead space of the microcatheter, a feature emphasized through the use of separate, color-coded syringes (Figure 4.2b). At the current time, only the Marathon (0.23 ml dead space, EV3), UltraFlowHPC (0.26 ml EV3), Rebar 10 (0.27 ml, EV3) and Rebar 14 (0.29 ml, EV3) are approved for use with Onyx.

In the US AVM IDE trial, a multi-center, randomized study in pre-surgical AVM patients, Onyx was demonstrated to be non-inferior to nBCA in achieving >50% AVM volume reduction when all patients entered into the study were considered (p=0.00002) and it was significantly better if only those patients who were evaluable (p<0.04) were considered. It is important to note that at the time this study was conducted, the injection techniques that are currently employed with EVOH were not yet fully refined. Thus, it is possible that the true extent of the superiority of EVOH was underestimated in this initial trial.

Whether the widespread application of Onyx using the current infusion techniques results in substantially higher angiographic cure rates and improved patient outcomes after surgery remains to be seen.

The EVOH–DMSO mixture itself is radiolucent. Commercially available EVOH–DMSO comes pre-packaged as a suspension containing micronized tantalum. The tantalum is maintained in suspension by placing the agent on a mechanical shaker, Vortex Genie-2 (Figure 4.2c), which provides continuous agitation of the mixture to avoid sedimentation during the procedure. The suspension must be agitated on the shaker for a minimum of 20 minutes prior to use. Additionally, it is important to note that the use of electrocautery on tantalum containing Onyx may produce sparks and at least one instance of spontaneous intraoperative combustion has been reported.

Although long-term data are lacking, EVOH is, like nBCA, for all intents and purposes, a permanent agent. Jahan et al. reported no recanalization in a small number of patients imaged up to 20 months after embolization. Murayama et al. demonstrated no recanalization in swine rete at 6 month follow-up.

Ethyl alcohol

On the basis of their success using ethanol to eradicate peripheral vascular malformations, Yakes et al. have advocated the use of undiluted absolute ethyl alcohol (ETOH) (98% dehydrated alcohol injection USP) for the embolization of central nervous system AVMs. They reported their initial results in a series of 17 patients. They were able to cure seven patients with ETOH alone, three additional patients were cured after surgery, and one after radiotherapy. Despite this impressive cure rate, it is important to note that two patients with partially treated lesions died and eight patients suffered complications related to the therapy. No other similar case series describing the application of ethanol has been reported to date.

ETOH is a sclerosant, functioning to dehydrate and denude the endothelium, creating fractures within the vessel wall that extend to the level of the internal elastic lamina. These changes result in acute thrombosis of the vessel.

ETOH causes significant brain edema, necessitating treatment with high doses of corticosteroids immediately before and for 2 weeks after the procedure. In some cases, brain edema and increases in intracranial pressure necessitate mannitol therapy. In high doses, ETOH has been also found to induce pulmonary pre-capillary vasospasm, which can lead to cardiopulmonary collapse. This effect has been reported in humans after the embolization of peripheral AVMs with ETOH. It is critical that the appropriate anesthesia and critical care resources are alerted to this possibility. Given these risks, the high level of experience required to perform ETOH embolization safely, and the relatively widespread experience and comfort level with the cyanoacrylates, there has been a general reluctance amongst most endovascular neurointerventionalists to use ETOH for the embolization of brain AVMs.

Particulate embolic agents

Many different particulate embolysates have been employed for the embolization of vascular malformations, tumors, and miscellaneous sources of uncontrolled head and neck bleeding.
These agents initially included such items as silk sutures and microfibrillar collagen material, eventually evolving to more refined materials including polyvinyl alcohol (PVA) and embolization microspheres. The application of particulate embolysates for the pre-operative embolization of vascular malformations has gradually declined with the increasing use of the liquid embolic agents (see above), which can be delivered through lower-profile microcatheter systems and provide a more complete and permanent occlusion. Currently, we do not employ particulate embolysates for the embolization of AVMs or AVF.

**Polyvinyl alcohol and embospheres**

Emboliization with particulate agents is fundamentally different from embolization with liquid agents.

**Durability**

Vessels embolized with particulate agents recanalize over time (i.e. these are temporary embolic materials). Sorimachi et al.
reported a 43% rate of nidal recanalization after particulate embolization with PVA. Mathis et al.\textsuperscript{14} reported a 12% recanalization rate for AVMs embolized with PVA in preparation for radiosurgery when portions of the AVM were not included in the radiation field. With the exception of preoperative embolization in anticipation of a prompt and complete resection to follow, particulate agents are relatively contraindicated given the availability of more permanent embolysates.

**Microcatheter selection**

To perform particulate embolization, a microcatheter with an internal diameter (ID) large enough to accept the particulate agent without clumping and clogging must be employed [Rapid Transit (Cordis Neurovascular, Miami, Florida), Prowler Plus (Cordis Neurovascular), Excelsior 1018 (Boston Scientific, Natick, Massachusetts), Renegade (Boston Scientific)]. These catheters are of higher profile and are considerably less flexible than the smaller diameter flow-directed catheters [Elite 1.5F or 1.8F (Boston Scientific), Marathon (EV3, Irvine California)].

Choice of embolysate type (PVA or Embospheres) and size is technically similar, the application of the particles are fundamentally different, owing to differences in their respective properties.

Embospheres come pre-loaded in a syringe into which contrast is aspirated. The suspension is prepared within the pre-loaded syringe and injected using a three-way stopcock and an additional 1 ml or 3 ml syringe.

**Detachable balloons**

The use of catheter-delivered, inflated, detached, and implanted embolic balloons is regarded by many as marking the beginning of endovascular surgical neuroradiology, and most credit Serbinenko as the first user. This work was followed by the contributions of Debrun and Heishima in North America, where the use of such devices became popular for endovascular occlusion of direct carotid cavernous fistulae; Hunterian occlusion of skull base aneurysms following test occlusion; and finally, with the adaptation of variable stiffness micro-catheters, balloon occlusion of intracranial aneurysms. This last-mentioned application has been supplanted by detachable coil embolization, which affords much more control over subarachnoid aneurysm treatment; it is consequently also much safer.

The devices themselves are characterized by the composition of the shell (latex or silicon) in a variety of sizes and shapes; by the valve mechanism, whose function is to sustain inflation over time and to occlude permanently large cranial vessels (from 3–10 mm in diameter); by the radio-opaque, compatible material used to inflate the balloon; and by the mechanism of detachment. In today’s practice, the advantage of detachable silicon balloons is conferred by their ability to create large vessel occlusions rapidly and economically. The disadvantages reside in their limited availability and relatively limited control for placement and detachment.

Debrun’s initial balloons were latex, fixed to the catheter by a manually tied string of latex thread, which would tighten as a result of elastic tension when the balloon was detached, in effect serving as a valve. These are no longer widely used.

Heishima introduced a simple, elegant silicon balloon with a more standardized silicon mitral valve that was open when mounted on the catheter (Figure 4.3). Silicone is semi-permeable so that contrast used to opacify the embolus needs be mixed to an osmolality that closely approximates that of blood, to avoid the risk of the device changing its size (and hence, secondarily, its position) after it had been implanted. Originally produced by a small company (International Therapeutics Corporation,
downstream embolization. The second balloon may then be positioned for deployment by successive inflation and deflation, which will cause the device to 'sail' with the flow of the vessel to the target point. A second balloon may be used to provide stabil-ity (by inflating it immediately proximal to the first balloon) so that, during traction on the initial balloon catheter, there is no movement during deployment. The second balloon may then be similarly deployed; in the event that one of these lesions fails, the alternate balloon continues to cede flow and thus precludes removal from the marketplace. The lone remaining commercially produced detachable balloon is the latex Gold Valve Balloon (Nycomed, Paris; Acta Vascular, Santa Clara, California), which at present is not FDA-approved for use in the USA.

Once the target vessel has been catheterized with an 8F guide (or larger) with a double tuoy, the balloon is mounted on a micro-catheter and all air is purged. Valve competency should be test on the bench top. The catheter-mounted balloon may be positioned for deployment by successive inflation and deflation, which will cause the device to 'sail' with the flow of the vessel to the target point. A second balloon may be used to provide stability (by inflating it immediately proximal to the first balloon) so that, during traction on the initial balloon catheter, there is no movement during deployment. The second balloon may then be similarly deployed; in the event that one of these lesions fails, the alternate balloon continues to cede flow and thus precludes downstream embolization.

**Detachable coils**

The introduction of detachable embolization coils has been the single largest advance in the field of neuroendovascular intervention. These coils greatly facilitate the safe percutaneous endovascular treatment of cerebral aneurysms. The available shapes, stiffness, and composition of the coils have changed dramatically over the past two decades.

**Sizes**

The weave of the platinum fibers that ultimately constitute the coil and define its outer diameter is referred to as the primary helix. The majority of aneurysm embolization coils are of either 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) outer diameter (OD) (e.g. GDC-10 Guglielmi detachable coils (GDC-10)) or 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) OD (e.g. GDC-18). Some manufactures have recently introduced coils with intermediate ODs (Orbit, Cordis Neurovascular: 0.012 inch (0.3 mm) OD). The coils also have a secondary helix, which defines the diameter that the coil would take if delivered unconstrained, measuring between 2 mm and 20 mm. Finally, coils have a defined length, which varies between 1 cm and 50 cm.

**Shapes**

In general, there are two varieties of coil shapes used for aneurysm embolization. Framing coils (three-dimensional or complex coils) are designed to emerge from the microcatheter in a configuration that results in the formation of a ‘basket’ distributed about the periphery of the aneurysm (Figure 4.4a). This basket then functions to contain the subsequent filling coils (standard, two-diameter or helical aneurysm coils of varying diameter, length and softness) within the central portion of the aneurysm (Figure 4.4b). Recently, several vendors have developed systems which are designed to fill the aneurysm via the successive use of multiple, complex framing-type coils, which are introduced in successively smaller sizes to form concentric baskets (Orbit, Cordis Neurovascular; GDC-360, Boston Scientific).

**Detachment mechanism**

Detachable coils are manipulated via an extended radiolucent ‘pusher’ segment, which extends from the proximal end of the radio-opaque platinum embolization coil. Once the coil has been introduced into the aneurysm and is in an acceptable position, the coil may be permanently detached from the pusher wire. Complete extrusion of the embolization coil from the micro-catheter is signaled in a variety of ways. All micro-catheters employed for aneurysm embolization have two markers, one indicating the distal tip of the micro-catheter and another 3 cm proximal to the distal tip marker. The pusher wires for embolization coils likewise have a radio-opaque proximal marker. The orientation of the proximal markers of the coil and micro-catheter serves to indicate that the coil has completely exited the microcatheter and may be detached (Figure 4.4c,d). Different vendors use different proximal marker configurations to indicate adequate coil introduction. The operator must remain cognizant of the appropriate configuration for the coil being used to avoid over- or under-deployment before attempted detachment.

The mechanisms for coil detachment also differ quite substantially between vendors. GDCs are deployed by passing a 9 volt current through the coil, which results in electrolysis of the distal segment of the radiolucent stainless steel pusher wire (Figure 4.4e). The initial generation of this technology was associated with prolonged detachment time, typically ranging between 4 and 12 minutes, but sometimes becoming substantially prolonged as the current was dissipated within a large coil mass. Further iterations of the detachment system with insulation added at the junction between the pusher wire and coil resulted in decreased dissipation of current and improved rapidity of detachment, which now typically requires less than
Figure 4.4
(a) Boston Scientific detachable framing coil. (b) Framing and packing coils (Left to right). The packing coils have variable degrees of ‘softness’, which is reflected by their ability to maintain shape when they are extended from the stylet (with permission from Boston Scientific). (c) Placement of coils under roadmap guidance within an anterior communicating artery aneurysm via the left internal carotid artery. Arrow indicates the coil marker along the stylet. (d) Fully placed framing coil. The arrow indicates the coil stylet marker ‘T’d’ at the proximal catheter marker. (e) Power pack and soldered junction used to detach coils. (f) Bare platinum, unexpanded hydrocoil, expanded hydrocoil. (Courtesy of Terumo.)
2 minutes. Other systems employ different pusher wire–coil detachment schemes; these alternative systems are all substantially faster then the initial GDC electrolytic detachment mechanism. Hydraulic detachment mechanisms used by Microvention-Terumo (Aliso Viejo, California) and Cordis Neurovascular are nearly instantaneous. ACT MicroCoils (Micrus Corp, Sunnyvale, California) use resistive heat-induced fracture of a tensioned polyester fiber that connects the platinum coil and pusher wire in Mircus coils, a process that takes approximately 5 seconds.

**Stretch Resistance**

During the repositioning of coils within an aneurysm, friction between the coils and within the microcatheter can result in a loss of coil integrity, with stretching or even breaking of the coil. To avoid this problem, some coils are designed with an internal 9.0 polypropylene thread, which confers some additional tensile strength and increases the tolerance of the coil to stretching.

**Composition**

Detachable embolization coils were initially composed purely of platinum. Later, detachable coils with bound Dacron fibers were provided to augment thrombogenicity. However, these coils are significantly less compliant than bare platinum coils and are used primarily for vessel sacrifice and fistula occlusion.

Studies of aneurysms treated with platinum embolization coils have demonstrated recurrence rates ranging between 20% and 35%, with a significant percentage of those patients requiring re-treatment. Correspondingly, histological studies of explanted aneurysms after endovascular coil embolization have demonstrated that intra-aneurysmal clot organization is typically delayed and incomplete, with tiny open spaces left between coils – even in aneurysms that appear completely occluded angiographically. In addition, there is frequently incomplete or absent endothelialization of the aneurysm neck. For these reasons, newer generations of detachable coils were developed in an attempt to promote more complete and durable aneurysm occlusion.

**Polyglycolic polylactic coils**

Polyglycolic polylactic acid (PGPLA) has been used extensively as suture material. The co-polymer undergoes hydrolysis over a period of several months, resulting in an inflammatory reaction that stimulates a more rapid organization of intra-aneurysmal thrombus and eventually a durable intra-aneurysmal scar. Three different preparations of PGPLA coils are currently available. The Matrix Detachable Coil System (MDC, Boston Scientific) is composed of a central platinum coil coated with PGPLA. The Cerecyte coil (Micrus, Sunnyvale, California) is composed of an outer platinum coil with an inner polyglycolic acid (PGA) filament. The Nexus coil (Microtherapeutics, Irvine, California) is composed of a platinum coil with numerous tiny PGPLA filaments, which extend from the inside of the coil outward. The durability advantages of these coils have yet to be demonstrated in humans.

**Hydrocoil**

The Hydrocoil Embolic System (HES Microvention-Terumo, Tokyo, Japan) contains an inner platinum core coil that is coated with a dehydrated hydrogel. When exposed to blood, the hydrogel expands over 20 minutes, substantially increasing the volume of the coils (Figure 4.4f) and thereby significantly augmenting packing density. The long-term durability of these coils, as well the full short-term impact upon the biology of subarachnoid aneurysms, is only beginning to be realized with clinical experience.

**Pushable or injectable coils**

Pushable or injectable coils are relatively inexpensive and can be delivered quickly in large numbers. As such, they are most useful in situations in which a large volume of embolic material is required to achieve the desired therapeutic effect. However, because these coils are not detachable, they can only be safely applied in those situations in which precise control of coil positioning is not absolutely required.

**Berenstein liquid coils**

This unique product is made in two ODs – 0.008 inch (0.2 mm) and 0.016 inch (0.4 mm) outer and in various lengths up to 30 cm. These coils are pre-loaded in a clear plastic launching tube, which is flushed and then used to load the coils into a micro-catheter. The coils are then injected using a 3 ml saline syringe with fluoroscopic observation, usually under blank fluoroscopic roadmap control. These small, long coils are excellent for filling space and achieving a dense packing over a long segment. They are very useful for parent vessel occlusion and fistula embolization (i.e. cases in which a large embolic coil mass is typically required).

**Pushable Coils**

There are numerous available fibered and non-fibered pushable coils available in a wide range of sizes (0.010–0.035 inches; 0.25–0.9 mm) and shapes (straight, complex or helical, and conical). These coils are loaded into the micro-catheter and either injected with saline or pushed out of the micro-catheter or diagnostic catheter with a coil pusher or wire. These coils can be quickly deployed and are very thrombogenic; again, they are most useful in achieving parent vessel occlusion and fistula embolization.

**Stents**

The term stent refers to an appliance used to correct a stenosis, (which derives from the Greek “to narrow.”) It is believed to have arisen from a dentist, Charles Thomas Stent (1807–1885), who gained notoriety through the introduction of a substance that...
became known as Stent’s compound used to form molded dental appliances or obturators (Stent’s Dressing) in the 1800’s. Ultimately this was commercialized in London and became widely used by English speaking oral and plastic surgeons. It has been posited that in the generalized training of surgeons, principles and applications of one specialty merged into another with ultimate use of the term to other applications and new technologies.51

In the context of endovascular therapeutics, the term refers flexible mesh tubes used primarily to preserve the luminal diameter of arteries. Typically these begin as solid metal of a given diameter which is precision cut and finished to a desired pattern of varying cell size and cross-linking.52 Vascular stents can be characterized by size, shape, alloy (e.g. stainless steel, cobalt chromium, nitinol), delivery mechanism and the presence or absence of coating polymer or mesh covering.

Balloon expandable stents

Large (> 4 mm) stents

The larger available balloon expandable stents are useful primarily for stenting the proximal extracranial vessels as they arise from the aortic arch, usually the subclavian or innominate arteries. In these cases, precise stent delivery is absolutely essential. These segments of the vessels are within the thorax and are therefore protected from significant deformation. As such, a self-expanding stent is not required. A variety of balloon-mounted stent systems are available, such as the Herculink [Abbott Vascular Devices, Santa Clara, CA, 4–7 mm diameter, 12–18 mm length, 0.014 inch (0.36 mm) microwire system], Omnilink [Abbott Vascular Devices, 4–10 mm diameter, 12–58 mm length, 0.035 inch (0.9 mm) guidewire system], Express (Boston Scientific, 4–7 mm, 15–19 mm), Racer (Medtronic, 4–7 mm, 12–18 mm), Palmez Genesis (Cordis Neurovascular, 5–12 mm, 12–59 mm), and Palmaz Blue Cobalt Chromium (Cordis Neurovascular, 4–7 mm, 12–24 mm).

Small (2.25–4.0 mm) stents

Non-drug-eluting stents

The non-drug eluting or ‘bare metal’, stainless steel stents were originally introduced as an inflexible ‘slotted tube’ design (Palmaz, Cordis Neurovascular). Progressive iterations of balloon-mounted stents were increasingly flexible and much better suited to intracranial delivery and deployment. These stents and the balloon catheters upon which they are mounted have continued to evolve, increasing the ease with which they can be used for neuroendovascular applications. The currently available devices include Driver and S660 (Medtronic), Multilink Vision, Minivision, Zeta, and Pixel (Abbott); Express-2 and Liberte (Boston Scientific). The only balloon-expandable stent specifically designed for use in the cerebrovasculature for the treatment of arterostenoses was the Neurolink (Guidant), which is no longer manufactured.

Drug-eluting stents

Delayed in-stent re-stenosis (ISR), attributable to intimal hyperplasia, has been noted to occur in up to 35% of patients after coronary stenting. A newer generation of drug-eluting stents has been developed, which, over time, release antiproliferative drugs (e.g. paclitaxel) or antineoplastic drugs (e.g, sirolimus, tacrolimus, everolimus), drugs which prevent smooth muscle cell in-growth and proliferation. These stents have led to a dramatic reduction in the rate and severity of ISR. To date, only balloon-mounted coronary drug-eluting stents are commercially available – Taxus Express-2 (Boston Scientific, which releases paclitaxel) and Gypher (Cordis, which releases sirolimus).

Self-expanding stents

Large self-expanding stents

Balloons-expandable stents are prone to kinking with normal physiologic neck motion, which can result in the stents being crushed or permanently deformed with subsequent occlusion or in-stent stenosis. For this reason, self-expanding devices are used almost exclusively for extracranial carotid stenting. A number of different carotid stent systems are available. The first FDA-approved stent was the Guidant Acculink system (Figure 4.5a), which may be used with or without a distal protection device (Accunet). The Acculink stent comes in diameters between 5 mm and 10 mm, including two tapered sizes (Figure 4.5b), which graduate from 6 mm to 8 mm from 7 mm to 10 mm over their length. The stents come in sizes from 20 mm to 40 mm. Other available self-expanding stent systems include the Magic WallStent (Boston Scientific, 3.5–6 mm in diameter, 11–43 mm in length, reconstraining), WallStent (Boston Scientific, 5–12 mm diameter, 20–90 mm in length, reconstraining), Precise (Cordis Neurovascular, 5–10 mm, 20–40 mm, non-reconstraining).

Small self-expanding stents

Neuroform

The Neuroform (Boston Scientific), a small (2.5–4.5 mm) self-expanding, flexible, micro-catheter-delivered, nitinol stent was introduced in 2002 for the treatment of wide-necked cerebral aneurysms (Figure 4.6). This very low radial force stent is composed of very thin (60µm) struts separating large (2Fch) interstices, through which a microcatheter can be passed. The stent is deployed across the neck of a cerebral aneurysm, functioning to support aneurysm embolization by preventing the prolapse of coils from the aneurysm into the parent vessel.53 Flexibility of these devices is afforded by the open-cell design and variable cross-linking (Figure 4.6b). Recently available is the Enterprise Stent (Cordis Neurovascular), which has a tear-drop-shaped, closed-cell design.

Wingspan

The Wingspan (Boston Scientific) is a small, self-expanding stent, which is very similar in design to the Neuroform. As opposed to Neuroform, Wingspan has been engineered to have a significantly greater radial force, and it is designed for the treatment of intracranial atheromatous disease. Following pre-dilation with a companion balloon (Gateway PTA Balloon Catheter, Boston Scientific), the lesion is crossed with the Wingspan delivery
Covered stent grafts

Metal stents covered with a membrane were introduced in the late 1990s for the treatment of coronary atheromatous disease, coronary artery aneurysms, and pseudoaneurysms and for the management of iatrogenic vessel perforation. The neuroendovascular applications of these devices has been limited to the exclusion of extracranial and proximal intracranial aneurysms and pseudoaneurysms.

The Jostent Graftmaster (9–26 mm in length, 3–5 mm in diameter; Abbott Vascular Devices, Santa Clara, California) is a balloon-mounted system that consists of two coaxially aligned, stainless steel stents which encompass a microporous polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) membrane that sits between the two stents. Several self-expanding, covered stents are also available, including the Symbiot (Boston Scientific, made of PTFE), Wallgraft (7–14 mm in diameter, 20–70 mm in length; Boston Scientific, made of polyethylene terephthalate), and Viabahn (Figure 4.7) (5–13 mm in million, 25–150 mm in length; WL Gore and Associates, made of expanded PTFE).

Smith et al.54 reported in-stent stenosis or occlusion in three of four Wallgraft stents implanted for the management of carotid pseudoaneurysms. This was attributed to an inflammatory response caused by the polyethylene terephthalate material. The durability and rates of in-stent stenosis for these devices has not yet been established, and their application in the cerebrovascular remains off-label and should probably be reserved for desperate situations in which few other options exist (e.g., carotid blowout).

Emboli protection and retrieval devices

Although technically not ‘implantables’ devices, emboli protection and retrieval devices are often used in the course of device system and the self-expanding stent is delivered, functioning to prevent post-angioplasty re-coil and to secure any post-angioplasty dissection or endothelial injury.
Implantation in order to prevent or reverse catastrophe. Increasingly, such devices are being specifically designed for use in acute stroke (e.g. the Merci Retriever) in an effort to mitigate the time constraints imposed by thrombolytic therapy alone.

**Embolic protection**

In the infancy of endovascular treatment of cerebral atherosclerotic disease, angioplasty and stent implantation were simply conducted over a guidewire. Perhaps in recognition of the formidable competition of relatively low risk carotid endarterectomy, the procedure evolved with implementation devices to limit embolization of atherosclerotic debris. There are essentially three strategies to such devices:

- filtration using modified guidewires
- cessation of antegrade flow utilizing a balloon-mounted guidewire, followed by vigorous flushing
- reversal of antegrade flow with temporary proximal occlusion utilizing a balloon-mounted guide catheter.

**Filter wires**

There are a variety of distal embolic protection devices that also serve as the guidewire for angioplasty and stent placement in the cervical carotid arteries. These include Angioguard (Cordis Neurovascular) Filterwire EX (Boston Scientific), Trap (Microvena, White Bear Lake, Minnesota), Neuroshield and Accunet (Abbott) (Figure 4.8a) and the Spider Fx (Ev3, Plymouth, Minnesota). The simple concept behind these devices is similar, although they do differ in important ways such as the materials, they are made of and the mechanism of deployment and recapture. It is important to emphasize that while emboli protection devices may be useful, they are not fool-proof, and emboli do occur despite their routine use. Likewise, depending upon the local anatomy (tortuosity of the aortic arch and target vessel, the presence of atherosclerotic plaque) these devices also have the potential to produce significant vascular trauma, and in some circumstances they may be contra-indicated.

**Distal occlusion**

An alternative approach to the use of filtration is complete distal occlusion utilizing a low-profile balloon on a 0.014 inch (0.36 mm) guidewire (GuardWire, Medtronic, Santa Rosa, California). Immediately prior to angioplasty and stenting the balloon is inflated. Afterward, the area is cleaned by aspiration and flushed via an aspiration catheter (Export XT Catheter, Medtronic Vascular, Santa Rosa, California) advanced over the wire. Limited comparisons suggest that this may have success similar to that of other embolic protection techniques.

**Proximal occlusion**

A third approach to limiting distal embolization during cervical intervention is the use of a proximal occluding balloon on the guide catheter to suspend antegrade flow. The Parodi antiembolization catheter (ArteriA, San Francisco, California) is a guiding catheter with an occlusion balloon attached at the distal end of the catheter. The main lumen has an inner diameter of 7F, which allows the passage of balloons and stents. When the Parodi catheter is inserted in the common carotid artery, a Parodi external balloon is inserted and inflated in the artery. Then, the occlusion balloon, attached on the outer surface of the Parodi catheter, is inflated, thereby occluding inflow to the carotid bifurcation while maintaining access to the carotid bifurcation lesion through the main lumen. The side port of the Parodi catheter may then connected to a sheath that is percutaneously inserted into the femoral vein to create a temporary arterial – venous shunt. This shunt, along with the Parodi catheter, will create reversal of flow in the internal carotid artery. One might presume that the ease of use and success of the device is predicated on a functional circle of Willis; however, the technique appears to be quite robust. A similar rationale underlies...
the use of balloon-mounted guide catheters (Concentric Medical, Mountain View, California) for mechanical thrombectomy in the setting of acute stroke.\textsuperscript{63,64}

**Retrieval devices**

Although fortunately a rare occur, the vagaries of anatomy, pathology, device malfunction or operator error may conspire against optimal or safe implantation of a neurovascular device. After such incidents one is often reminded of Hippocrates: ‘Life is short, the art is long. Opportunity is fleeting, experiment dangerous, judgment difficult. Desperate cases need desperate remedies.’\textsuperscript{65}

The decision to retrieve a foreign body or embolus mechanically, and the selection of the appropriate device, is dictated by multiple factors, including the clinical presentation (e.g. hemorrhagic or ischemic), the need for adjunctive pharmacologic therapy (e.g. thrombolysis or anticoagulation), and the projected risk and clinical consequences of failure (primum non nocere—first, do no harm).\textsuperscript{64}

**Devices for foreign body removal**

*Gooseneck snare*

A simple wire loop [e.g. the Anplatz Goose Neck Snare (Microvena Corporation, White Bear Lake, Minnesota)] may be advanced through a micro-catheter in an effort to ensnare and retrieve a foreign object.\textsuperscript{67} This maneuver is best accomplished when the object has a free edge projecting to the lumen of the vessel and the snare loop approximates the diameter of the lumen. The device can be tightened to the target by advancing the delivery catheter and thus closing the loop. Occasionally this maneuver can be performed over an existing catheter, delivering the loop directly to the target.\textsuperscript{68}

*Alligator retrieval device*

The Alligator retrieval device (Chestnut Medical Technologies, Menlo Park, California) operates under a similar strategy as the snare; however, rather than lassoing the target object, the device has four arched prongs that close or grasp an object when the delivery microcatheter is advanced distally (Figure 4.8b). This device is capable of retrieving small stents and aneurysm coils as well as large thrombotic emboli.\textsuperscript{69}

*Baskets*

The Neuronet or In-Time retrieval devices (Boston Scientific and Target Therapeutics) are the natural engineering extension of the Microsnare and the Alligator: a miniature wire basket deployed through a microcather, which can be engaged and tightened upon a foreign body for retrieval.\textsuperscript{68,70}

**Mechanical thrombectomy**

*Merci retriever*

The Merci retriever system of devices (Concentric Medical, Mountain View, California) have undergone multiple iterations since their initial introduction to clinical practice. Optimally, each is introduced through a balloon-occluding guide catheter, which facilitates retrieval of emboli by reversing flow (or at least limiting antegrade flow) in the carotid or vertebral arteries. (Figure 4.9a) The retriever itself began as a simple 0.014 inch (0.36 mm) nitinol corkscrew (models X5, X6, Figure 4.9b), but has since evolved to a more complex configuration with filaments meant to ensure a greater yield in securing distal embolic material (Model L5) (Figure 4.9c). The obvious advantage of these devices is the potential for rapid re-canalization relative to pharmacologic therapy.

*AngioJet*

If the Merci retriever is the ‘hand vacuum’ for small distal emboli, the AngioJet (Possis Medical, Minneapolis, Minnesota) is the ‘industrial shop vacuum’. The AngioJet is actually a variety of
Embolic agents and materials, stents, delivery systems, and retrieval devices

Minnesota), Vasoseal (Datascope Corp, Montvale, New Jersey), Perclose or Starclose (Abbott Vascular, Santa Clara, California), and Duett (Vascular Solutions, Minneapolis, Minnesota).

Although no sufficiently powered study currently exists to demonstrate the superiority of these devices over mechanical compression, they do allow a shorter time to hemostasis and patient ambulation, particularly when patients are anticoagulated or on antiplatelet medications. The available devices employ a variety of different mechanisms, including delivery of sealant [e.g. Bovine collagen (Angioseal) or collagen plus thrombin (Duett), suture (Perclose), or hemostatic clip placement (Starclose). Some devices can also be classified as intravascular (Angioseal, Perclose) or extravascular (Duett, Starclose).

Angioseal achieves hemostasis by anchoring an exovascular bovine collagen plug to the arteriotomy site via an intravascular bioabsorbable anchor (Figure 4.11). Both components of the sealing device are absorbed in 8–12 weeks. This device comes in mechanical thrombectomy catheters (Figure 4.10a) connected to a high-pressure, pulsed saline pump (Figure 4.10b) to create a low-pressure Venturi effect that fragments and ‘sucks’ thrombus into the catheter lumen. The device also aspirates effluent from the catheter and pump circuit (see Figure 4.10b). Originally used for coronary revascularization and lower extremity occlusive disease, it has also been applied to the cerebral circulation. While reports of use in the carotid and vertebral arteries are limited, there are multiple reports of successful revascularization of large clot burden in cases of extensive dural sinus thrombosis.

**Closure devices**

A number of devices are available for arteriotomy closure, including the Angioseal STS Platform (St Jude Medical, St Paul, Minnesota), Vasoseal (Datascope Corp, Montvale, New Jersey), Perclose or Starclose (Abbott Vascular, Santa Clara, California), and Duett (Vascular Solutions, Minneapolis, Minnesota).

![Figure 4.10](a) Angiojet rheolytic catheters (b) Angiojet pump and drive unit (Courtesy of Possis Medical.).
References


The role of endovascular therapies in acute ischemic stroke

Thomas J Masaryk, Shaye Moskowitz and Irene Katzan

According to the Oxford English Dictionary a sudden inexplicable cerebrovascular accident was first likened to a ‘stroke of God’s hand’ in 1599. The relationship of cerebral infarction to an act of God exists in other cultures: the Greek verb plessos means ‘stroke, hit, or beat’ and its derivative plegia is the root of the term ‘hemiplegia’.

Stroke is the third most common cause of death and the leading cause of adult disability in the USA. It afflicts approximately 700,000 Americans each year. Classically, stroke is defined as a sudden focal, non-convulsive neurological deficit lasting 24 hours or more and caused by disruption of the cerebral circulation. It is a syndrome with multiple potential etiologies: embolism, thrombosis, and hemorrhage. Cerebral infarction, which comprises 80–85% of all strokes, is the result of an irreversible derangement in cellular metabolism that rapidly occurs after interruption of blood flow to a portion of the brain.

Up to the 1980s the approach to patients with acute ischemic stroke was often nihilistic, and to some extent it remains so. It is estimated that following acute vascular occlusion, one loses 1.9 million neurons per minute. However, in the late 1970s experimental evidence began to accumulate that this is not an immediate or an ‘all-or-none’ phenomenon, and that patients may have additional neural dysfunction far in excess of the initial region of infarction. This border-zone region – ischemic and dysfunctional yet (at least temporarily) potentially viable – became known as ‘the ischemic penumbra’. It was this knowledge, coupled with the ability of CT to expeditiously exclude hemorrhagic etiologies and cases of completed infarction that prompted early clinical trials for acute stroke treatment to preserve this potentially viable tissue.

**Intravenous thrombolytic therapy**

The 1990s witnessed a renewed devotion to the treatment of acute ischemic stroke with several randomized prospective trials conducted to assess the outcome of patients treated with thrombolytic agents. The pivotal study was the National Institutes of Neurological Disorders and Stroke (NINDS) randomized, prospective trial of recombinant tissue plasminogen activator (rt-PA) for acute ischemic stroke. Confirmed using other thrombolytic agents, results from this trial demonstrated that with medical intervention within 3 hours of ictus:

- the number of patients with favorable outcomes for each of the primary measurements was higher in the rt-PA group;
- there was a 12% absolute (32% relative) increase in the number of patients with minimal or no disability;
- there was an 11% absolute (55% relative) increase in the number of patients with a National Institutes of Health Stroke Score (NIHSS) of 0 or 1; and
- there was no significant difference in mortality, although symptomatic intracerebral hemorrhage was significantly more common in the rt-PA group (6.4% compared to 0.6% in the placebo group).

There were several key features of this trial, including:

- the routine use of a numeric score assessing the severity of stroke at the time of presentation and at follow-up;
- the rapidity at which treatment was given (within 3 hours from the onset of symptoms); and
- the use of limited, unenhanced computed tomography.

Generalizability of the safety risks in general clinical practice has been demonstrated. Two clinical, reliable, numeric scoring systems were established. The NIHSS is a 42-point scale used to quantify the severity of stroke deficit (Table 5.1). Although the score is skewed toward the hemisphere involved in language, the scale has been found in multiple stroke treatment trials to be reproducible, and it provides a good sense of the gravity of the clinical problem at hand:

- NIHSS 4–10 represents moderate severity of stroke with potential for good outcome
- NIHSS 11–20 represents severe deficit with greater likelihood of severe disability or death
- NIHSS >20 represents impending catastrophe.
Table 5.1 National Institutes of Health Stroke Scale* (NIHSS)

Administer in order shown. Record initial performance (do not go back).

1a. Level of consciousness
0 Alert; keenly responsive
1 Not alert, but arousal by minor stimulation to obey, answer or respond
2 Not alert, requires repeated stimulation to attend, or is obtunded and requires strong painful stimulation to make movements (not stereotyped)
3 Comatose: responds only with reflex motor (posturing) or autonomic effects, or totally unresponsive, flaccid and areflexic

1b. Level of consciousness questions
Patient is asked the month and his or her age.
0 Answers both questions correctly (no credit for being close)
1 Answers one question correctly or cannot answer because of: ET tube, orotracheal trauma, severe dysarthria, language barrier, or other problem not secondary to aphasia
2 Answers neither question correctly, or is: aphasic, stuporous, or does not comprehend the questions

1c. Level of consciousness commands
Patient is asked to open and close the eyes, and then to grip and release the non-paretic hand. Substitute another one-step command if both hands cannot be used. Credit is given for an unequivocal response in poorly responsive or non-comprehending patients.
0 No drift (holds leg at 30° or 45° for full 10 seconds)
1 Drift (leg falls before 5 seconds, but does not hit bed)
2 Some effort against gravity (leg falls to bed by 5 seconds)
3 No effort against gravity (leg falls to bed immediately)
4 No movement
9 Amputation or joint fusion: explain

5. Motor arm (5a, left; 5b, right)
Instruct patient to hold the arms outstretched, palms down (at 90° if sitting or 45° if supine). If consciousness or comprehension-impaired, cue patient by actively lifting arms into position while verbally instructing patient to maintain position.
0 No drift (holds arm at 90° or 45° for full 10 seconds)
1 Drift (holds limbs at 90° or 45° position, but drifts before full 10 seconds but does not hit bed or other support)
2 Some effort against gravity (cannot get to or hold initial position, drifts down to bed)
3 No effort against gravity, limb falls
4 No movement
9 Amputation or joint fusion: explain

6. Motor leg (6a, left; 6b, right)
Instruct patient (while patient is supine) to maintain the non-paretic leg at 30°. If consciousness-or comprehension-impaired, cue patient by actively lifting leg into position and verbally instruct patient to maintain position. Then repeat in paretic leg.
0 No drift (holds leg at 30° full 5 seconds)
1 Drift (leg falls before 5 seconds, but does not hit bed)
2 Some effort against gravity (leg falls to bed by 5 seconds)
3 No effort against gravity (leg falls to bed immediately)
4 No movement
9 Amputation or joint fusion: explain

7. Limb ataxia
(looking for unilateral cerebral lesion.) Finger–nose–finger and heel–knee–shin tests are performed on both sides. Ataxia is scored only if clearly out of proportion to weakness. Ataxia is absent in the patient who cannot comprehend or is paralyzed.
0 Absent
1 Present in one limb
2 Present in two limbs
9 Amputation or joint fusion: explain

8. Sensory
Test with pin. When consciousness- or comprehension-impaired, score sensation as normal unless a deficit is clearly recognized (e.g. clear-cut asymmetry of grimace or withdrawal). Only hemisensory losses attributed to stroke are counted as abnormal.
0 Normal, no sensory loss
1 Mild to moderate sensory loss (pin-prick feels dull or less sharp on the affected side, or loss of superficial pain to pin-prick but patient aware of being touched)
2 Severe to total (patient unaware of being touched in the face, arm, and leg)

9. Best language
In addition to judging comprehension of commands in the preceding neurologic examination, the patient is asked to describe a standard picture, to name common items, and to read and interpret the standard text in the box below. The intubated patient should be asked to write.

You know how.
Down to earth.
I got home from work.
Near the table in the dining room.
They heard him speak on the radio last night.

0 Normal, no aphasia
1 Mild to moderate aphasia (some loss of fluency, word-finding errors, naming errors, or paraphasias or impairment of communication by either comprehension or expression disability)
2 Severe aphasia (great need for inference, questioning and guessing by listener; limited range of information can be exchanged)
3 Mute or global aphasia (no usable speech or auditory comprehension) or patient in coma (item 1a = 3)
The role of endovascular therapies in acute ischemic stroke

Another routine scale emphasized by the NINDS rt-PA study was the modified Rankin score, used to gauge clinical outcome and disability at 90 days (Table 5.2).

The second, but perhaps most important, feature of the NINDS trial was the fact that all patients were treated in under 3 hours from the onset of symptoms. Other acute stroke trials have confirmed the crucial role played by expediency, with clinical benefit falling off rapidly by 3 hours. (Figure 5.1).\(^2\) Indeed, as in many areas of emergency medicine, the ability to distill the delivery of care to rote efficiency is crucial. (Table 5.3).\(^3,4\) This has further led to the recognition that this level of efficiency is likely to be obtained only at well-equipped centers that routinely see stroke patients and where personnel are motivated to maintain a certain level of preparedness.\(^5,6\) Implicit within the last statement is the ability of the center to marshal the appropriate personnel and communicate clearly and efficiently the clinical situation;\(^7,8\) the meter is running at 1.9 million neurons per minute. Hence, there must be coordinated efforts with emergency medical services, immediate availability of physicians and surgeons knowledgeable in the diagnosis and management of acute stroke, CT technologists, nurses, and anesthesiologists accessible via emergency pager 24 hours a day and able to be on site within minutes.\(^9\)

Finally, in an effort to meet the time commitment of 3 hours, the NINDS trial adhered to the most basic form of neuroimaging for quickly excluding hemorrhage, neoplasm, and the possibility of fully completed infarction. The combination of clinical history, NIHSS, and simple CT scan creates a heuristic setting in which the diagnosis of ischemic stroke is possible. The interpretation of the unenhanced CT scan is crucial not only in excluding hemorrhage prior to administration of thrombolytic agents, but also in identifying subtle clues to areas of completed infarction.\(^10,11\)

Within the parameters of the NINDS trial, predictors of outcome included:

- age\(^12\)
- presenting NIHSS\(^13,14\)
- time to treat\(^15\)
- serum glucose level\(^16,17\)
- pre-existing medical regimen (specifically the positive impact of statins and the potentially negative effect of aspirin).\(^18,19\)

### Intra-arterial thrombolysis

With the experience gained in the NINDS trial, and careful analysis of contemporary clinical studies, came an appreciation of the full spectrum of ischemic stroke, and also of the limitations of the 3-hour time window and of intravenous thrombolytic infusion therapy.

In angiography-based pilot trials of intravenous rt-PA, the rate of re-canalization of major arterial occlusions was low, with partial or complete re-canalization of only 10% of occluded internal carotid arteries and 25% of occluded proximal middle cerebral arteries.\(^20,21\) The majority of cases in these trials had only partial re-canalization (TIMI-2), with a minority having complete reperfusion (TIMI-3). By comparison, TIMI-3 perfusion flow occurs in 50–55% of subjects with acute myocardial infarction treated with thrombolytic agents and in 75% of subjects treated with primary angioplasty and stenting.\(^22,23\)

The large majority (75–80%) of acute stroke subjects with NIHSS scores ≥10 have occlusions of a major extracranial or
Furthermore, these same subjects with a high NIHSSS who often failed to re-canalize with intravenous rt-PA were also at increased risk of symptomatic intracranial hemorrhage — risk as high as 17% for an NIHSS >20.\(^4\)

Given the time imperative, the risk of hemorrhage, and the continued high morbidity and mortality of severe strokes treated with intravenous thrombolytic agents, a logical next step was emergency intra-arterial therapy. Trial design poses significant logistical and ethical hurdles in acute stroke, particularly in patients eligible for an accepted intravenous treatment.\(^4\)\(^5\)\(^-\)\(^9\) Consequently, data from randomized, controlled trials of intra-arterial thrombolytics (Prolyse in Acute Cerebral Thromboembolism, or PROACT) is limited to the use of recombinant pro-urokinase (proUK) in patients within 6 hours of angiographically documented middle cerebral artery occlusion.\(^1\)\(^7\)\(^-\)\(^9\)\(^4\)\(^8\)\(^9\) The follow-up study, PROACT II, was conducted at 54 North American centers where 180 patients with middle cerebral artery occlusion within 6 hours of onset of symptoms were randomized to intra-arterial proUK plus heparin or heparin only. A total of 40% of the thrombolysis patients versus 25% of control patients had a modified Rankin score of 2 or less at 90 days (\(p=0.04\)), indicating mild to no disability. Mortality was similar between groups, although the early symptomatic hemorrhage rate was higher in the proUK group (10% vs. 2%). While not surprising that the re-canalization rate was higher with lytics than without (66% versus 18%), it is worth noting that the infusion was carried out over 2 hours.\(^4\) Additionally, the median time to start of intra-arterial therapy in the PROACT II was 5.3 hours, and only three subjects had therapy started within 3 hours. Re-canalization, when it occurred, often happened more than 7 hours after stroke onset. Thus, using current intra-arterial strategies and systems, the time from symptom onset to re-canalization is often greater than 7 hours. Two published reports of intra-arterial thrombolytic therapy indicate that treatment begun within 3–4 hours of symptom onset is associated with higher rates of re-canalization and better outcome.\(^5\)\(^2\)\(^5\) Additional variables that appeared to affect success of therapy in PROACT were similar to those of the NINDS: age, presenting NIHSS, CT signs of completed stroke, and location of thrombus.\(^5\)\(^2\)\(^1\)

The overall prognosis for these subjects after rt-PA therapy in the NINDS rt-PA trial was poor (albeit better than for those treated with placebo). Given the apparent failure of intravenous thrombolysis to re-canalize major arterial occlusions in earlier angiography-based trials, the overall outcome in this NINDS rt-PA trial subgroup is not surprising.\(^5\)

**Table 5.3** Acute stroke checklist

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time of onset</th>
<th>Age of patient</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Able to consent</td>
<td>Pregnant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Right- or left-handed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NIHSS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vital signs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Blood pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart rate and rhythm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticoagulation status</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contraindications to thrombolysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Recent surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systolic blood pressure &gt;180 mm Hg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coagulopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;3 hours post-ictus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Known intraparenchymal central nervous system neoplasm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imaging available</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parenchymal changes in over one-third of the vascular territory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vascular occlusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfusion mismatch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contact information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Parent or spouse or medical power of attorney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Living will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immediate activation of emergency endovascular technologist, nurse and physician</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NIHSS, National Institutes of Health Stroke Scale.
Beyond intra-arterial thrombolysis: adjunctive mechanical thrombectomy and stenting

**Imaging**

The FDA approval of intravenous rt-PA for stroke led to a focus on acute ischemic stroke as a true medical emergency, as well as a careful and continuous reexamination of how acute stroke evaluation and management can be improved. Since the publication of the NINDS trial, imaging has evolved that can rapidly identify the vascular anatomy and the location of the occlusion; it can also estimate the degree of completed infarction and potential salvageable surrounding brain parenchyma.

Subsequent stroke treatment trials have attempted to use advances in neuroimaging to improve patient selection by identifying specific etiologies responsible for the variety of clinical presentations of ischemic stroke (i.e. cardioembolic stroke, stroke due to small vessel or lacunar disease, stroke of determined etiology such as large vessel disease or dissection, and ischemic stroke of unknown etiology), as well as the patients who may potentially benefit from treatment (i.e. even those beyond the 3-hour window). The primary imaging modalities include CT angiography and perfusion imaging (Figure 5.2) and magnetic resonance (MR) angiography and diffusion and perfusion imaging (Figure 5.3). Certainly each modality has strengths and weaknesses. Multi-row detector CT scanners (with 16 rows or more) allow ready access to acutely ill patients, can rapidly identify acute hemorrhage, and produce excellent quality angiographic images from the aortic arch to vertex, but provide limited perfusion information (see Figure 5.2). Conversely MR studies are exquisitely sensitive to early changes of hemispheric ischemia with full-coverage perfusion studies, but they must be performed in the somewhat hostile environment of a high magnetic field with limited patient visibility, and they provide somewhat limited angiographic imaging. In the context of how data impact time to treatment (see Figure 5.1), it is our practice to use CT as the modality of choice in cases less than 6 hours from onset of symptoms (see Figure 5.2). Beyond that time, and in cases where there may be fewer negative outcome predictors (particularly age and NIHSS), we often resort to MR studies to assist clinical decision making (see Figure 5.3).

It is worth noting that the sensitivity of diffusion-weighted imaging with b values $\geq 1000$ that enables it to detect areas of infarction in patients who might otherwise have been clinically labeled as having transient ischemic attacks is remarkably high ($>40\%$). The propensity for early recurrent infarction in such cases has led to an appreciation of the need to identify and manage such patients more aggressively (Table 5.4).

**Pharmacological adjuncts**

Pharmacologic adjuncts to intravenous therapy have been proposed (in a fashion analogous to treatment for acute myocardial infarction) in an effort to improve both the odds as well as the speed of cerebral artery re-canalization. However, analogies to coronary intervention must be tempered by concern for further exacerbating the risk of intracranial hemorrhage.

Glycoprotein IIb–IIIa inhibition certainly has a role in acute intervention involving thrombolytics, implantable stents, and acute coronary syndromes. These agents are potent anti-platelet agents; they include abciximab, eptifibatide, and tirofiban. Controlled trials of these agents for stroke have been without great success, but they were limited to use of these anti-platelet agents alone. While anecdotal reports of their use in combination with other agents have been more encouraging, their precise role in stroke therapy remains to be defined.

Additional pharmacologic manipulation has been directed at minimizing complications from ischemia, both by reducing secondary morbidity and by affording neuroprotection. This role in stroke therapy remains to be defined.

**Mechanical devices**

On the basis of the limited ability of intravenous thrombolytic therapy to recanalize acute large vessel occlusions, and the logistical and pharmacological delays imposed by intra-arterial therapy, a variety of physical maneuvers have been proposed to expedite re-canalization. These include:

- ultrasound
- foreign body retrieval devices (Figures 5.4, 5.5, 5.6)
- aspiration systems
- emergent stenting (Figures 5.7, 5.8)

The largest experience to date has been with the Merci retriever device (see Figure 5.4). This device is approved by the Food and Drugs Administration (FDA), and it is currently available for use by any interventionalist treating a patient with an acute stroke who is ineligible for intravenous rt-PA or a patient who has failed thrombolytic therapy. The Merci device is a system consisting of a balloon-tip guiding catheter and retriever. The inflated balloon of the guide catheter placed in the proximal vasculature interrupts or reverses flow. The retriever itself is a flexible, tapered core nitinol wire with a helical shaped tip used to ensnare and retrieve the thrombus.

The clinical basis for FDA 510(K) clearance was the Mechanical Embolus Removal in Cerebral Ischemia (MERCI) Trial, which was a prospective, single-arm multicenter trial conducted at 25 US centers in two parts. Part I enrolled 55 subjects and part II enrolled an additional 96 subjects, for a total of 151 subjects. Primary outcomes, which were reported on the basis of an intention-to-treat analysis, were the rate of vessel re-canalization and rate of observed device related complications. Complications were defined as vessel perforation, arterial dissection, or embo-lization of a previously uninvolved territory. The primary efficacy endpoint of vascular re-canalization (TIMI grades 2 or 3) was compared to the data published on the spontaneous
Figure 5.2
(a) CT angiogram in an acute stroke involving the dominant hemisphere of a 47-year-old man. There is a severe stenosis involving the left internal carotid artery (LICA) origin (left arrow) with a thrombotic saddle embolus in the ipsilateral M1–M2 junction (right arrow). (b) CT perfusion study demonstrating a delayed time-to-peak map (left), limited perfusion map (center), and cerebral blood volume (right), which demonstrates relative preservation of the cortex in the left middle cerebral artery (MCA) territory. (c) Near-complete occlusion of the LICA, which a microcatheter easily passed. When the MCA is injected, the saddle embolus is obvious. Recognizing the need to lyse the thrombus as well as the likely necessity of opening the carotid, 5mg rt-PA was administered as well as half the loading dose of abciximab. (d) While the pharmacologic treatment works (above), the carotid is stented (left, solid arrow). LICA injection post-stent demonstrates early lysis of the thrombus.
The role of endovascular therapies in acute ischemic stroke

Figure 5.2 (Continued)
(e) View with an additional 5 mg of rt-PA and additional abciximab has been titrated to 70% inhibition. (f) Follow-up CT. The patient walked out of the hospital on discharge and on return at 8 weeks to clinic he was neurologically normal. Note that this use of rt-PA and abciximab is not FDA-approved.

Figure 5.3
(a) Initial MR diffusion scan and angiogram of a 40-year-old woman with transient speech disturbance and hemiparesis caused by left internal carotid artery dissection (arrow). Two days post-admission, symptoms returned while she was being anticoagulated.
(b) The patient was transferred from the outside hospital 72 hours from the time of deterioration. MR diffusion study demonstrates a typical watershed pattern of infarction in the white matter with sparing of the cortex (lower right, arrows). The perfusion study demonstrates markedly delayed time to peak map, diminished cerebral perfusion and compensatory increased cerebral blood volume in the affected left hemisphere. (c) 80 hours after the return of her fixed deficit, repeat angiography demonstrates extension of the dissection (arrow), which was successfully stented (center and right.) The patient slowly improved and was normal at 8 weeks follow-up.
Table 5.4 ‘ABCD2’ patient profile to identify patients at high early risk of stroke after a transient ischemic attack

| Age 60 years or older | Blood pressure ≥140/90 mmHg | Clinical signs and symptoms of hemiparesis or speech disturbance | Duration of symptoms ≥60 minutes or more | Diabetes |


Table 5.5 Management of hypertension after administration of rt-PA for acute cerebrovascular accident

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Blood pressure</th>
<th>Intervention</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Systolic 180–230 mmHg and/or Diastolic 110–120 mmHg</td>
<td>Labetalol 10 mg intravenously over 1–2 minutes, repeat or double dose every 10–20 minutes up to 150 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systolic &gt;230 mmHg and/or Diastolic 121–140 mmHg</td>
<td>As above, but if labetalol is contraindicated or ineffective, use nitroprusside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diastolic &gt;140 mmHg</td>
<td>Start nitroprusside 0.5–10 µg per kilogram per minute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recanalization rate in the control arm of the PROACT II study. Under the protocol up to six passes with retriever devices were allowed. A total of 1809 patients were screened to recruit the 151 subjects. Subjects had to have completed the first pass with the device within 8 hours of onset of symptoms and had to have a baseline NIHSS score of ≥10 in part I or ≥28 in part II. Vessels eligible for treatment with the retriever device included the internal cerebral artery (ICA), the ICA terminal bifurcation, the M1 section of the middle cerebral artery (MCA), the M2 section of the MCA (allowed in Part II), the basilar artery, or the vertebral artery. Ten of the 151 subjects enrolled did not have the device deployed for a variety of reasons, many of which were technical and related to catheter access.

In comparison to PROACT, patients enrolled in the MERCI trial with MCA occlusion presented with slightly higher NIHSS and also a slightly higher rate of modified Rankin score of >2 (mild or no disability) at 90 days. Re-canalization rates for vertebral or basilar artery occlusion were also higher.

This study was followed by the Multi-Merci trial, which was likewise a prospective, single-arm trial of patients with large vessel stroke (vertebral, basilar, ICA, ICA-terminus, M1 or M2 occlusion) treated within 8 hours of symptom onset. Primary outcome was vascular re-canalization (TIMI 2 or TIMI 3) and safety. Physicians used a newer generation device (L5) first and subsequent passes could be made with the L5 or with the first-generation devices (X5 or X6). Adjuvant therapy with intra-arterial rt-PA was allowed after retriever use, with a maximum dose of 24 mg.

Preliminary Multi-Merci data indicated that the baseline NIHSS score was similar to that of the MERCI Trial. However, there was significant decrease in the mortality rate, with similar rate of symptomatic hemorrhage when compared with subjects.

Figure 5.4
(a) Carotid, AP and lateral RCCA angiographic views demonstrating a filling defect (convex margin, arrow) in the right M1 segment. (b) AP and lateral RCA injections after successful thrombectomy using the Merci retriever. A small residual filling defect can be seen in the M1 segment.
treated in the MERCI trial. On the basis of the preliminary Multi Merci data, the use of intravenous rt-PA before mechanical thrombectomy appears safe, with a symptomatic hemorrhage rate of 7.8%. Mechanical thrombectomy with both first- and second-generation Merci devices is effective to open intracranial vessels, with a re-canalization rate of 48%. This is significantly better than the spontaneous rate of 18% seen in the PROACT II control group. Enthusiasm for the device should be tempered by a comparison with the treatment group for intra-arterial rt-PA in PROACT II, for whom re-canalization occurred in 66%.

These trials also emphasize the observation that clinical outcome is tied to successful re-vascularization. The collective MERCI data demonstrated that clinical improvement was seen with successful re-canalization, whether a device was used or not. Ninety-day outcomes for modified Rankin scores of 0–2 was 39% for those patients in whom recanalization occurred, compared with only 3% for those in whom it did not. Similar patterns were seen for mortality and NIHSS scores. These data support the use of the Merci device during acute ischemic stroke in patients who are either ineligible for intravenous thrombolytic therapy or in whom intravenous thrombolytic therapy has failed.

Ultrasound-enhanced thrombolysis is another potential combination therapy. The Combined Lysis of Thrombus in Brain ischemia with Transcranial Ultrasound and Systemic Tpa (CLOTBUST) II trial was a prospective randomized clinical trial of 126 patients with MCA occlusions. The patients were randomized to receive intravenous rt-PA alone or rt-PA plus low intensity ultrasound using a 2MHz transcranial Doppler probe placed on the affected artery. Complete re-canalization or dramatic clinical recovery within 2 hours of rt-PA bolus occurred in 49% of the ultrasound plus rt-PA group and in 30% of the rt-PA only group ($p=0.03$). Several trials are currently evaluating the use of microbubble and ultrasound in combination with intravenous thrombolysis in patients with MCA occlusion. Additional studies utilizing locally applied, intra-arterial ultrasound devices have also suggested improved re-canalization rates, although the exact mechanism of therapeutic augmentation is not well understood.

---

**Figure 5.5**

(a) Carotid, anterior–posterior (AP) and lateral right common carotid artery (RCCA) angiographic views demonstrating a filling defect (convex margin, arrow) in the left M1 segment. (b) AP view demonstrating Merci retriever at the defect using simultaneous guide and distal micro-catheter roadmap. (c) Following unsuccessful attempts to re-canalize using the Merci device, a stent was placed across the occlusion (lines highlighted by arrows on this unsubtracted view. (d) AP and lateral angiogram after stent placement. Note that this is not an FDA-approved use of intra-cranial stents.
Figure 5.6

(a) CT angiography demonstrates a filling defect secondary to a saddle embolus at the basilar summit (block arrow). Notice the lack of filling of the posterior communicating artery (long arrows). (b) Confirmatory conventional angiogram demonstrating convex margin of the filling defect (arrow). (c) Anterior–posterior (AP) and lateral unsubtracted views of the micro-catheter in the distal basilar artery, from which extends the tines of the alligator retriever (arrows). (d) AP and lateral posterior circulation angiograms post-thrombectomy. Note that this is not an FDA-approved use of the alligator retrieval device.
The role of endovascular therapies in acute ischemic stroke

Figure 5.7
(a) Anterior–posterior (AP) and lateral angiogram in a patient with an acute carotid terminus occlusion, probably due to saddle thrombo-embolism (block arrow). (b) Micro-catheter view confirming distal middle cerebral artery patency (left) before stent placement (right). (c) Oblique, AP and lateral left common carotid artery angiographic views post-stent. Stenting across soft thrombus almost universally produces immediate re-canalization, with soft clot bulging at the interstices of the stent creating a ‘quilt-like’ pattern. Following stent placement and re-canalization, lysis can occur in a more controlled fashion. Note that this is not an FDA-approved use of intra-cranial stents.
Figure 5.8
(a) Aortic arch angiogram demonstrates delayed filling of both vertebral arteries. (b) Anterior–posterior (AP) and lateral delayed views from a left internal carotid artery angiogram demonstrate watershed collateral circulation and delayed filling to the posterior cerebral artery territory. (c) Lateral and AP left vertebral artery (LVA) angiograms demonstrate poor intracranial filling with a distal LVA stenosis. The right vertebral artery is filling retrogradely. A distal micro-catheter view (right) demonstrates that the distal posterior circulation remains patent. Proximal posterior circulation occlusions are often secondary to thrombosis in situ, while thromboemboli are often carried to the basilar summit. (d) Post-angioplasty (left), unsubtracted view, post-Wingspan stent (center), and post-procedure angiogram (right).
The role of endovascular therapies in acute ischemic stroke

Strategy

Optimal therapy for acute ischemic stroke is, at best, a work in progress. Co-ordination of timely patient access, universal imaging protocols, effective pharmacologic regimens, and endovascular devices requires a constant re-calibration of risks versus benefits, particularly in the absence of FDA-endorsed therapies. Guidance on implementing stroke care is available from treatment guidelines and clinical trial protocols. Joint Commission stroke center certification, and Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education certification of endovascular training programs. Certainly one logical strategy to minimize time to treatment while attempting to intervene for patients with large vessel occlusion (who are unlikely to benefit from intravenous treatment alone) is being studied in the Emergency Management of Stroke (EMS) trial and the Interventional Management of Stroke (IMS) trial. In these trials patients with suspected large vessel occlusions (NIHSS >10) received intravenous thrombolytics at the earliest possible moment (at two-thirds of the NINDS dose or 0.6mg per kilogram rt-PA over 30 minutes) while the resources are marshaled to initiate intra-arterial treatment. Early results have trended towards improved outcomes with combined treatment when compared with intravenous thrombolysis alone. More recent iterations (such as IMS III) have included mechanical device, such as the Merci system, would not necessitate the use of antiplatelet agents to prevent acute, in-stent thrombosis. In such dire cases, in which the use of antiplatelet agents is pre-ordained, we have followed the experience outside the cerebral circulation and incorporated their administration (calibrated by point-of-service testing to minimize the risk of hemorrhage; see Chapter 3) with any initial attempts at intra-arterial thrombolysis. This may then be followed by proximal stenting during the preliminary period, in which lytic therapy is given the opportunity to work.

References

10. Yamaguchi T, Mori E, Minematsu K et al. Alteplase at 0.6 mg/kg for acute ischemic stroke within 3 hours of onset: Japan Alteplase Clinical Trial (J-ACT). Stroke 2006; 37: 1810–5.
The role of endovascular therapies in acute ischemic stroke


Hippocrates was the first to describe transient ischemic attacks (TIAs), noting that ‘unaccustomed attacks of numbness and anesthesia are signs of impending apoplexy.’ And while Sir Thomas Willis appreciated the significance of the communicating arteries in preserving cerebral collateral flow, it was not until the 1950s that C Miller Fisher associated TIAs with carotid bifurcation disease and stroke. The first successful carotid endarterectomy (CEA) was performed shortly thereafter. By the early 1980s CEA was the most frequently performed vascular surgical procedure. Nevertheless, the subsequent failure of the external carotid–internal carotid bypass operation to prevent stroke and the absence of randomized clinical endarterectomy trial data provoked challenges about the procedure’s safety and efficacy. In early 1990s, six randomized clinical trials established the efficacy of CEA plus aspirin compared with aspirin alone in preventing stroke in patients with atherosclerotic carotid bifurcation stenosis. Similarly, long-term outcome studies have better defined the natural history of intracranial atherosclerotic disease treated medically.

Minimally invasive, percutaneous techniques to re-establish arterial blood flow paralleled the development of vascular surgery (although in a delayed fashion, reflecting the evolution and ultimate digitization of real-time angiography). In 1964, Charles Dotter and Melvin Judkins reported the first transluminal angioplasty using a series of catheters of ever-increasing diameter. Subsequently Andreas Grundzig reported and popularized balloon angioplasty for (initially) the coronary circulation and (ultimately) the peripheral circulation. Almost 10 years later, Palmaz was the first to report the implantation of vascular stents to preserve luminal diameter following angioplasty.

One of the benefits of large, well-controlled randomized surgical trials is the establishment of accepted primary and secondary outcome benchmarks as well as the natural history of the underlying disease. Enthusiasm for the adaptation of the endovascular innovations of angioplasty to the cerebral circulation was initially tempered by a healthy respect for potential thromboembolic complications, intracranial hemorrhage, and the excellent results achievable by capable surgeons as documented using these benchmarks. Nevertheless, in the context of what is now known regarding the natural history of the disease and further refinements in percutaneous techniques, selective application of angioplasty and stenting has become established as a tool in the armamentarium against stroke. In the USA in 2005, carotid revascularization volumes include 103,000 CEA, and there are ever-increasing numbers of carotid artery stenting procedures. Indications may include selective instances of extra- and intracranial atherosclerosis, dissection, post-surgical re-stenosis, arteritis, erosion and stenosis by neoplasm, and penetrating trauma.

Atherosclerotic cerebrovascular disease

Atherosclerosis accounts for up to one-third of all strokes. Approximately 50% of strokes occur in the territory of the carotid arteries, and while extracranial carotid disease is more frequent in Caucasians, intracranial disease is more frequent in non-whites. Carotid disease that is amenable to revascularization accounts for 5–12% of new strokes. Carotid atherosclerosis is typically unifocal, and 90% of lesions are located within 2cm of the origin of the internal carotid artery (ICA) (see Figure 6.4). The degree of carotid stenosis is associated with stroke risk in symptomatic patients. Carotid atherosclerosis can produce retinal and cortical symptoms by either progressive carotid stenosis leading to hypoperfusion (less commonly) or by intracranial arterial embolization (more commonly). The risk of progression of carotid stenosis is 9.3% per year, and risk factors for progression include:

- ipsilateral or contralateral ICA stenosis greater than >50%;
- ipsilateral external carotid artery (ECA) stenosis >50%; and
- systolic blood pressure >160mmHg.

Nearly 80% of strokes due to carotid atherosclerosis occur without warning, emphasizing the need for careful screening and follow-up. In patients who do present with a sentinel TIA, the risk of secondary stroke in temporal proximity to the initial symptoms is high.

Medical therapy

A demographic profile can gauge the risk of stroke based on age, systolic blood pressure, antihypertensive therapy, diabetes,
Endovascular Techniques in the Management of Cerebrovascular Disease

cigarette smoking, and history of coronary artery disease (CAD), congestive heart failure, or atrial fibrillation. Clinical findings must be correlated with brain and vascular imaging to determine whether or not suspected atherosclerotic cerebrovascular disease is symptomatic. Imaging is critical to assess the anatomy and structural pathology of the brain (e.g. mass, old or new stroke, presence of hemorrhage) and the cervical vessels (e.g. stenosis, plaque morphology, dissection), and to guide treatment. In asymptomatic patients there are no guidelines to support routine carotid imaging, except for some candidates for coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG.). Prior to CABG, carotid duplex studies are recommended in asymptomatic patients who are older than 65 years or who have left main coronary artery stenosis; peripheral arterial disease; a history of smoking, TIA, or stroke; or a carotid bruit. Hypertension is major risk factor for all forms of cerebrovascular disease by virtue of its direct atherogenic effects on the systemic and cerebral circulations, and by association with CAD and atrial fibrillation. Control of blood pressure is key to modification of atherogenic risk factors: there is a linear relationship between increasing blood pressure and stroke risk.
Even small reductions in systolic pressure (10 mmHg) and diastolic pressure (3–6 mmHg) result in a 30–42% decline in the risk of stroke. Systolic hypertension is an especially important risk factor in the elderly.

Recent trials of angiotensin converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors and angiotensin receptor blockers (ARBs) suggest that these agents may have benefits for stroke reduction that extend beyond their antihypertensive effects. The Heart Outcomes and Prevention Evaluation (HOPE) trial studied 9297 patients with high cardiovascular risk, including 1013 patients with previous TIA or stroke. Patients were randomized to ramipril 10 mg daily or placebo, and ramipril was associated with a 32% reduction in stroke over 5 years. Although ramipril was associated with a significant antihypertensive effect (2–3 mmHg decline in systolic and diastolic blood pressure) these benefits were felt to be insufficient to explain the dramatic decline in stroke. In the Losartan Intervention for Endpoint (LIFE) trial, losartan and atenolol achieved similar degrees of blood pressure reduction, but losartan was associated with a 13% reduction in cardiovascular events and a 25% reduction in stroke. Potential added benefits of ACE inhibitors and ARBs include inhibition of angiotensin II-mediated vasoconstriction and vascular smooth cell hyperplasia, improved endothelial function, and enhanced fibrinolysis.

Smoking increases the risk of ischemic and hemorrhagic stroke (particularly subarachnoid hemorrhage), and the risk is directly proportional to the number of cigarettes smoked. The risk is higher in female smokers who use oral contraceptives. Passive exposure to cigarette smoke nearly doubles the risk of stroke in spouses of smokers. The risk of stroke decreases to that of non-smokers within 5 years of smoking cessation.
The relationship between dyslipidemia and stroke has not been demonstrated consistently. However, there is a relationship between total cholesterol, low-density lipoprotein cholesterol, and the extent of extracranial carotid artery atherosclerosis and wall thickness.68,69 Furthermore, efforts to manage hypercholesterolemia with statins may have the added benefit of a protective effect in the event of actual ischemic insult.60-64

Gemfibrozil reduced stroke rates by 24% in the Veterans Affairs High Density Lipoprotein Cholesterol Intervention Trial (VA-HIT) study.70 Niacin reduced stroke by 22% in the Coronary Drug Project.71 Pravastatin, simvastatin, and atorvastatin are approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) in the USA for stroke prevention in patients with CAD,65,67,68 although the benefits may be mediated by anti-inflammatory, plaque stabilization, and neuroprotective effects (rather than direct cholesterol reduction). The Stroke Prevention with Aggressive Reduction of Cholesterol Levels (SPARCL) trial studied atorvastatin 20mg for secondary prevention of stroke in 4731 patients without CAD and documented a 16% relative risk reduction for recurrent stroke.69,70

Statins may be effective for secondary prevention in patients undergoing CEA.72 The National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP) guidelines and the American Stroke Association (ASA) recommend statins in patients with prior TIA or stroke or carotid stenosis >50%.60,61

Diabetes is a major independent risk factor for stroke.62-64 The combination of diabetes and hypertension increases the risk of stroke six-fold compared with normal patients, and the risk is two-fold higher than in normotensive diabetics. Abdominal obesity contributes more than body mass index to the presence of insulin resistance, hypertension, and dyslipidemia, and secondarily to the risk for stroke;65 however, there are no reports correlating weight loss with reduced stroke risk.

Additional risk factors include the use of oral contraceptives (especially in women over 35 years), elevated fibrinogen, and elevated C-reactive protein.66-68 These factors exacerbate the primary risk factors of hypertension, smoking, and diabetes listed above.

Risk factor modification with medical therapy is recommended to limit progression of atherosclerosis and to decrease clinical events, irrespective of carotid artery revascularization.69,70 Therapy should also include an antiplatelet agent. For asymptomatic patients with one or more cardiovascular risk factors, antiplatelet therapy is indicated. For symptomatic patients (with a recent TIA or minor cerebrovascular accident), the recommendations for antiplatelet therapy are based on large stroke prevention studies70-74 that included patients with a variety of stroke etiologies.

The relative risk reduction conferred by aspirin therapy is 16% for fatal stroke and 28% for nonfatal stroke.75 Randomized trials indicate that aspirin is superior to CEA for symptomatic patients with carotid stenosis <50%70,71,72,73 and for asymptomatic patients with carotid stenosis <60%.65 Early studies suggested benefit with low-dose aspirin.70-72 The risk of myocardial infarction, stroke, and death within 1–3 months of CEA was lower for patients taking low-dose aspirin (81mg or 325mg daily) than for those taking high-dose aspirin (650mg or 1300mg daily).73

Ticlopidine has been shown to be useful for secondary prevention after stroke in the Canadian-American Ticlopidine Study (CATS); it resulted in a 23% reduction in cardiovascular events.74 The Ticlopidine Aspirin Stroke Study (TASS) looked at patients after TIA or major stroke;75 ticlopidine caused significantly fewer cerebrovascular events and less bleeding, but neutropenia complicated therapy in 0.9% of patients. Clopidogrel has largely replaced ticlopidine because of a superior safety profile and its once-daily dosing. For preventing stroke in secondary prevention trials, clopidogrel was similar to aspirin in the Clopidogrel versus Aspirin in Patients at Risk of Ischemic Events (CAPRIE) trial.76 The combination of clopidogrel plus aspirin was similar to aspirin alone in the Clopidogrel for High Atherosclerotic Risk and Ischemic Stabilization, Management, and Avoidance (CHARISMA) trial.77 In the Atherothrombosis with Clopidogrel in High-Risk Patients With Recent Transient Ischemic Attack or Ischemic Stroke (MATCH) trial, the combination of aspirin plus clopidogrel increased the risk of systemic and intracerebral hemorrhage, but it did not decrease the risk of stroke compared with clopidogrel alone.78 Hence, aspirin and clopidogrel appear to have similar efficacy, but the combination may increase the risk of serious bleeding and is not superior to either drug alone.79 Nevertheless, in cases of recurrent symptoms despite antiplatelet therapy, dual therapy with may be warranted.

Warfarin is recommended for primary and secondary prevention of stroke in patients with atrial fibrillation. However, in patients with non-cardioembolic stroke there were no differences between warfarin and aspirin in stroke, death, or major bleeding.80 Moreover, and the Warfarin Aspirin Symptomatic Intracranial Disease (WASID) trial failed to show an advantage for warfarin compared with aspirin, and there was additional morbidity.81

In summary, antiplatelet therapy is favored over warfarin in patients with cerebral atherosclerotic disease who are not at risk of cardioembolic stroke.

Revascularization of carotid atherostenosis

Work-up and indications

Indications for carotid stenting must always be framed in the context of the more established alternative, endarterectomy. Guidelines from the American Heart Association (AHA) recommend CEA in symptomatic patients with a stenosis of 50–99%, when the risk of periprocedure stroke or death is less than 6%.82 Pooled analysis of 6092 patients with 35,000 patient-years follow-up (using uniform definitions of stenosis severity and outcome) revealed a 1.1% mortality and a 7.1% incidence of stroke or death at 30 days after CEA.83 After 5 years, CEA was associated with a 48% relative risk reduction in ipsilateral stroke in patients with a stenosis of 70–99%, a 28% relative risk reduction in ipsilateral stroke in patients with a stenosis of 50–69%, and no benefit in patients with stenosis of less than 50%.

For asymptomatic patients, AHA guidelines recommend CEA for patients with a stenosis of 60–99%, when the risk of perioperative stroke or death is less than 3%. Pooled analysis of asymptomatic carotid endarterectomy trials include 5,223 patients with 17,037 patient years follow-up, averaging 3.3 years per patient.84 At 30 days, the risk of stroke or death after CEA was 2.9%. In comparison with aspirin alone, CEA was associated with a 31% relative risk reduction in stroke or perioperative death during the study period, but the absolute risk reduction was only 1% per year. Interestingly, all of the risk was in men (51% relative risk reduction) rather than in women (4% relative risk reduction), and in younger patients. Also, outcome after CEA in asymptomatic patients was not associated with stenosis severity.
Implicit in these guidelines is the accurate assessment of carotid stenosis as measured in the North American Symptomatic Carotid Endarterectomy Trial (NASCET) and the Asymptomatic Carotid Atherosclerosis Study (ACAS). This method utilizes the diameter of the proximal ICA above the carotid bulb as the reference diameter relative to the diameter of the stenosis, as seen in the projection in which it appears most severe. All patients being considered for carotid artery stenting (CAS) must meet these angiographic criteria. Nevertheless, carotid duplex studies, magnetic resonance angiography (MRA), and CT angiography (CTA) are often recommended for the initial evaluation of patients with carotid artery disease.

The mainstay of carotid duplex evaluation is the determination of flow velocity using spectral Doppler analysis. Meta-analyses and a multidisciplinary consensus conference suggest that peak systolic velocity is the single most accurate duplex parameter for determination of stenosis severity. Compared with angiography, carotid duplex has a sensitivity of between 77% and 98% and a specificity of between 53% and 82% for identifying or excluding an ICA stenosis >70%. Women have higher flow velocities than men. In patients with a severe carotid stenosis or occlusion, compensatory increases in contralateral blood flow may result in spuriously high velocities in the patent ICA. In this situation, the ratio of peak systolic flow velocities in the proximal ICA and the distal common carotid artery (the ICA–CCA peak systolic velocity ratio) is a better determinant of stenosis severity. The accuracy of diagnostic criteria may vary substantially between laboratories. Optimal diagnostic criteria may change over time, and there is significant intraobserver variability. Hence ultrasound laboratories must have strict quality-assurance programs to establish optimal internal diagnostic criteria. When carotid duplex results are unclear, diagnostic accuracy may increase to >90% when it is used in conjunction with CTA and/or MRA.

MRA allows imaging of aortic arch, cervical carotid and intracranial lesions that are not accessible by carotid duplex studies. When compared with conventional angiography, first-pass contrast enhanced three-dimensional MRA maximum-intensity projections correlate with angiography stenosis in 90% of cases, and correlation is best for severe stenoses. Additional benefits include the ability to image the aortic arch and the circle of Willis as well as highly sensitive diffusion techniques for acute ischemic brain injury (within minutes, up to 14 days). Limitations include the inability to perform MRA because of claustrophobia, pacemakers, implantable defibrillators, and obesity.

The combination of these ultrasound and MRA techniques provides better concordance with digital subtraction angiography than either test alone (combined 96% sensitivity and 80% specificity), but is not cost-effective for routine use. MRA following stent placement is safe and has been attempted; however, magnetic susceptibility artifact and Faraday shielding significantly degrade the image about the implant. CT ABDCT allows axial carotid imaging at speeds capable of capturing a three-dimensional arterial snapshot from the aortic arch to the vertex of the cerebrum. Like MRA, CTA is useful when carotid duplex studies are ambiguous, permitting as it does visualization of arterial arch or high bifurcation pathology, reliable differentiation of total and subtotal occlusion, assessment of ostial and tandem stenoses, and evaluation of carotid disease in patients with arrhythmias, valvular heart disease, or cardiomyopathy. When compared with carotid duplex, CTA is more specific for high-grade lesions, and in one study it altered surgical planning in 11% of cases.

Comparing CTA with enhanced MRA, one study showed that CTA was less reliable. With CTA, the sensitivity and specificity for detecting carotid stenosis of more than 70% was 85–95% and 93–98%, respectively. CTA sensitivity and accuracy can be increased by examining axial source images and volume-rendered projections, and by the use of faster, high-resolution multi-slice scanners.

Carotid and cerebral angiography has the same complications as other arterial catheterization techniques: access site injury, blood loss requiring transfusion, contrast nephropathy, anaphylactic reactions, and stroke. In symptomatic patients undergoing cerebral angiography, the risk of stroke is 0.5–5.7%, and the risk of TIA is 0.6–6.8%. In asymptomatic patients in the ACAS trial, stroke occurred in 1.2% of patients after angiography. More recent studies reported stroke and TIA rates of less than 1%, suggesting that the risk may be lower. Possible explanations include faster digital equipment, technique, operator experience, and the use of antplatelet agents.

In the USA, Medicare and Medicaid reimbursement for carotid stenting is limited to the use of facilities and to physicians that meet minimum standards and use FDA-approved stents and emboli protection devices (EPDs) for high-risk patients with symptomatic stenosis >70%. The minimum standards include credentialing of all operators as well as a continuous quality assessment program. The term ‘high risk’ applies to conditions outlined in Table 6.1. Additional high-risk patients (symptomatic stenosis >50%, asymptomatic stenosis >80%) may also be eligible if enrolled in a category B Investigational Device Exemption (IDE) trial or post-approval studies that are under FDA sponsorship and FDA Institutional Review Board supervision.

### Stenting carotid atherosclerotic stenosis: risks and benefits

The risk of stroke in patients with carotid stenosis is primarily dependent on symptom status and stenosis severity, and it is

---

**Table 6.1 High-risk conditions for carotid endarterectomy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Risk Factors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Previous radiation therapy to the neck</td>
<td>Previous CEA with recurrent re-stenosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High cervical internal carotid artery stenosis or below-the-clavicle common carotid artery stenosis</td>
<td>Severe tandem lesions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contralateral carotid artery occlusion</td>
<td>Contralateral laryngeal nerve palsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age &gt;80 years</td>
<td>Severe pulmonary disease</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Significant cardiac co-morbidity:
  - Congestive heart failure (New York Heart Association Class III or IV) and/or known severe left ventricular dysfunction;
  - Open heart surgery needed within 6 weeks
  - Recent myocardial infarction (more than 24 hours and less than 4 weeks ago)
  - Unstable angina (Canadian Cardiovascular Society Class III or IV)

CEA, carotid endarterectomy.
secondarily influenced by the presence of silent infarction, contralateral disease, extent of collaterals, atherosclerotic risk factors, plaque morphology, and other clinical features.\textsuperscript{10,121}

Patients with asymptomatic carotid bruits are more commonly seen than patients with symptomatic carotid stenosis. A carotid bruit is identified in 4–5% of patients aged between 45 and 80 years (it is higher in patients with known atherosclerosis), and it may be appreciated in most patients with carotid stenosis ≥75%.\textsuperscript{120,121} Carotid stenoses ≥50% have been identified in 7% of men and 5% of women older than 65 years. However, a bruit may be absent if there is slow flow through a severe stenosis, so cervical bruits are neither specific nor sensitive for identifying severe carotid stenosis.

In asymptomatic patients, the annual stroke risk is less than 1% for carotid stenoses <60% and 1–2.4% for carotid stenoses >60%\textsuperscript{,130,131} In the Asymptomatic Carotid Surgery Trial (ACST), there was no relationship between the risk of stroke and increasing stenosis severity from 60% to 99% for asymptomatic patients.\textsuperscript{132} Patients referred for CAGB have a particularly high incidence of asymptomatic carotid stenosis with a prevalence of 17–22% for carotid stenosis >50% and 6–12% for carotid stenosis >80%. The risk of perioperative stroke after CAGB is 2% for carotid stenosis <50%, 10% for carotid stenosis of 50–80%, and as high as 19% for carotid stenosis >80%.\textsuperscript{124}

The prevalence of silent cerebral infarction in patients with asymptomatic carotid stenosis is estimated to be 15–20%,\textsuperscript{118} and appears to be associated with a higher risk of subsequent stroke. In patients with ICA occlusion, the annual stroke risk is influenced by the number of intracranial collateral pathways.\textsuperscript{124}

The risk of stroke is substantial in symptomatic patients;\textsuperscript{10,15} and it is highest immediately after the initial ischemic event. In NASCET, the risk of stroke in the first year was 11% for carotid stenosis of 70–79% and 35% for carotid stenosis ≥90%\textsuperscript{,120,123} Patients with carotid stenosis of 70–99% had a 2-year ipsilateral stroke risk of 26%. Somewhat paradoxically, patients with near-occlusion have a lower stroke risk.\textsuperscript{123,124}

Other factors that influence the risk of stroke include the clinical manifestations, contralateral disease, intracranial disease, intracranial collaterals, and plaque morphology.\textsuperscript{120,121,127} In the NASCET, the 3-year risk of ipsilateral stroke was 10% after retinal TIAs and 20.3% after hemispheric TIAs.\textsuperscript{124} The presence of concomitant intracranial disease raised the 3-year risk of stroke from 25% to 46% in patients with carotid stenosis of 85–99%.\textsuperscript{129} In NASCET patients with carotid stenosis of 70–99%, the presence of contralateral carotid occlusion increased stroke risk by more than two-fold,\textsuperscript{130} whereas the presence of collaterals decreased the stroke risk by more than two-fold.\textsuperscript{119} Stroke risk in symptomatic patients may also be influenced by plaque morphology, including the presence of hypochoic or echolucent plaque\textsuperscript{,131} and plaque ulceration,\textsuperscript{127,132} irrespective of the degree of stenosis.

Beyond stroke risk, many patients with carotid stenosis are elderly and may have additional co-morbidities. Given the risk of revascularization, patients must live several years to reap the full benefit of either CEA or CAS (see the Kaplan–Meier survival curves in Figures 6.1, 6.2). Indeed, in the European Long-term Carotid Artery Stenting Registry (ELOCAS), which included 2172 CAS patients from four centers, despite a high rate of procedural success at 1, 3, and 5 years of follow-up, stroke or death occurred in 4.1%, 10.1%, and 15.1%, respectively.\textsuperscript{133} Similarly, the early experience in the Carotid Revascularization Endarterectomy versus Stent Trial (CREST) cautioned against stenting in octogenarians.\textsuperscript{134} The fact that CEA is associated with more risk in patients with co-morbidities does not mandate that patients undergo CAS. A list of contraindications to carotid stenting is included in Table 6.2

### Carotid artery stenting: technique

Beyond indications and informed estimation of risk versus benefit, there are additional lessons to be learned from the experience of CEA. Centers were selected to participate in CEA trials based on volume and vetting of low complication rates, raising concern that the results might not be applicable to community practice.\textsuperscript{135} In fact, operative mortality is higher in Medicare audits\textsuperscript{136,137} and in high-risk patients who would have been excluded from the randomized trials.\textsuperscript{138} Bond et al. have also confirmed lower complication rates for high-volume operators and high-volume centers.\textsuperscript{138,141} This raises the often prickly issue of credentialing for CAS (Table 6.3).\textsuperscript{117} Additionally, the standard medical therapy for the randomized CEA trials was aspirin, and many physicians believe that ‘best medical therapy’ with statins, ACE inhibitors, and stricter control of risk factors may be superior to aspirin alone.\textsuperscript{139} Finally, standard practice after CEA does not include routine evaluation by a neurologist. In a large meta-analysis of nearly 16,000 symptomatic patients with CEA, the 30-day risk of stroke and death was 7.7% if a neurologist evaluated the patient, and 2.3% if a vascular surgeon performed the evaluation.\textsuperscript{140} These data support the need for independent neurological evaluation pre- and post-CAS.

A summary of pre-CAS evaluation and preparation is included in Table 6.4. With rare exceptions great care must be taken to optimize fully the patient’s medical regimen prior to the procedure. In particular it has become our practice to insure that the patient is therapeutic (>70% inhibition of platelet function) relative to aspirin and clopidogrel prior to CAS and that the patient is receiving statins.\textsuperscript{130,133}

Initial intraprocedure management consists of mild sedation and analgesia, anticoagulation, hemodynamic monitoring (ECG and arterial pressure monitoring) and support, and intermittent neurological assessment. Once arterial access has been achieved, unfractionated heparin is given to maintain the activated clotting time between 230 and 300 seconds. There are no published data on low-molecular-weight heparin. The use of bivalirudin was

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 6.2 Contraindications to carotid artery stenting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Clinical</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Life expectancy &lt; 5 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Strict contraindication to antplatelet agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Renal dysfunction precluding contrast administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neurological</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Sustained major functional or cognitive impairment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Major stroke within 4 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Anatomical</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Inability to achieve safe vascular access</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Severe tortuosity of aortic arch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Severe tortuosity of common carotid artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Extensive plaque calcification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Intra-luminal thrombus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Total occlusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Intracranial aneurysm, arterial–venous malformation or primary intra-axial neoplasm requiring treatment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
permitted in some CAS trials, but data in large numbers of patients are not available. Potential advantages with bivalirudin include lower bleeding risk, rapid offset that permits early sheath removal, and no need for monitoring of the activated clotting time. The use of glycoprotein IIb–IIIa inhibitors has not been performed, and to date distal EPDs have advantages as proximal EPDs proximal to the bifurcation, usually by exchange over a relatively stiff 0.035-inch (0.9 mm) exchange length (300cm) guidewire with the tip located in a distal branch of the ECA artery under roadmap guidance. The guide is connected to a pressurized heparin flush solution (4,000 IU/liter), which is fixed to a rotating hemostatic valve.

As with angioplasty performed elsewhere in the body, the stenosis is first crossed with a guidewire under roadmap guidance. Given the eloquent nature of the end-organ, this and any future manipulation of the atherosclerotic plaque must be kept to a minimum and performed with great care to avoid embolic events. Several systems or EPDs have been developed to minimize this risk. There are two categories of EPDs: proximal EPDs and distal EPDs.

Proximal EPDs rely on transient occlusion of the CCA proximal to the target lesion (with a balloon) and the ECA (with a smaller balloon), resulting in stagnant or reversed flow in the ICA. An advantage of such a system is that embolic protection is established even before the lesion is crossed with a guidewire. After stent placement and angioplasty, aspiration of blood from the carotid bifurcation removes any debris; this is followed by re-establishment of antegrade flow with balloon deflation.

Distal EPDs are deployed after crossing the stenosis. Generally these systems consists of a 0.014-inch (0.36 mm) guidewire-mounted occlusive balloon or filter, over which angioplasty and stenting are performed. Disadvantages of this design include the necessity of traversing the atherosclerosis prior to full deployment of the balloon or filter, as well as the fact that the diameter of the filter sheath is substantially larger than the guidewire alone. In the case of balloon occlusion, once it has been inflated, debris is aspirated from the occluded carotid artery after manipulation and prior to deflation and re-establishment of antegrade flow. With filter devices, collected debris within the filter is captured and removed when the filter is re-constrained with a sheath (Figures 6.5, 6.6).

Controlled studies of proximal and distal EPDs for CAS have not been performed, and to date distal EPDs have advantages as well as limitations. Certainly even in skilled hands these devices do not guarantee that an embolic event will not occur as the result of failed deployment, vascular trauma, cognitive and technical skills to offer the most appropriate therapy. This might also entail optimal hemodynamic management necessitating sufficient neurointensive skills.

### Technical requirements

I. Technical requirements for performance of carotid stenting, including adequate procedural skill achieved by repetitive training in an approved clinical setting by a qualified instructor. This includes the ability to correctly interpret a cervicocerebral angiogram, which serves as the prerequisite and foundation for the technical performance of cervicocerebral angiography. Minimum numbers of procedures to achieve competence: 100 diagnostic cervicocerebral angiograms.

II. Clinical management requirements

I. In addition to procedural technical experience requirements, a minimum of 6 months of formal cognitive neuroscience training in a program in radiology, neuroradiology, neurosurgery, neurology, and/or vascular neurology approved by the Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education is required.

II. Formal training and competency in the National Institutes of Health Stroke Scale.

III. Maintenance of proficiency by lifelong continuing medical education and continuing performance of cases with adequate success and outcomes with minimal complications.

### Table 6.3 Requirements for performance of carotid artery stenting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cognitive requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. A fund of knowledge regarding stroke syndromes and TIA etiologies, evaluation of traumatic and/or atherosclerotic neurovascular lesions, and inflammatory conditions of the central nervous system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. Formal training that imparts an adequate depth of knowledge of the brain and its associated pathophysiologic vascular processes, including management of complications of endovascular procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. Diagnostic and therapeutic acumen, including the ability to recognize and manage procedural complications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. Ability to recognize clinical intra- or post-procedural neurological symptoms, as well as pertinent angiographic findings and the proper cognitive and technical skills to offer the most appropriate therapy. This might also entail optimal hemodynamic management necessitating sufficient neurointensive skills</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Technical requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. Technical requirements for performance of carotid stenting, including adequate procedural skill achieved by repetitive training in an approved clinical setting by a qualified instructor. This includes the ability to correctly interpret a cervicocerebral angiogram, which serves as the prerequisite and foundation for the technical performance of cervicocerebral angiography. Minimum numbers of procedures to achieve competence: 100 diagnostic cervicocerebral angiograms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical management requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. In addition to procedural technical experience requirements, a minimum of 6 months of formal cognitive neuroscience training in a program in radiology, neuroradiology, neurosurgery, neurology, and/or vascular neurology approved by the Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education is required.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 6.4 pre-carotid artery stent protocol

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>History and physical examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NIHSS, National Institutes of Health Stroke Scale</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vascular imaging of vascular anatomy (carotid duplex scans, CTA, or MRA)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preferably to include aortic arch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basic laboratory tests including renal function, coagulation profile (including aspirin and clopidogrel platelet function testing), and blood counts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACE inhibitors (If indicated)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medication</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aspirin 81–325 mg per day for at least 4 days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statins</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACE inhibitors (If indicated)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

NIHSS, National Institutes of Health Stroke Scale; CTA, computed tomography angiography; MRA, magnetic resonance angiography; ACE, angiotensin converting enzyme.
Endovascular Techniques in the Management of Cerebrovascular Disease

or incomplete capture of debris. Furthermore, certain situations such as severe tortuosity of the ICA or precarious positioning of the guide catheter extending from the arch may predispose to such failures and are relative contraindications to the use of EPDs.

If a patient does develop focal neurological symptoms or signs during the procedure, removal of the protection device (or deflation of the occlusion balloon) may result in resolution. Alternatively if, after this maneuver, the patient remains symptomatic, it is important to assess for evidence of distal emboli. Distal ICA or proximal middle cerebral artery occlusions are associated with a high degree of morbidity and should entail consideration of mechanical means of thrombectomy (see Chapter 5). Alternatively if there is no evidence of occlusion, and particularly if symptoms are accompanied by acute headache, hypertension, and bradycardia, an emergent head CT scan (conventional or cone bean with flat-panel digital systems) should be obtained to exclude hemorrhage.

After placement of the EPD, the stenosis is usually under-dilated with a small diameter angioplasty balloons (2–4 mm in diameter and 20 mm in length) to allow passage of the stent delivery system. With placement of the stent, the carotid stenosis is again dilated using an undersized balloon (typically 5 mm in diameter and 15–30 mm in length) to expand the stent more fully (Figure 6.7). Because over-aggressive balloon inflation increases the risk of embolic complications there is no need for an angiographically perfect result. Additionally, in previously unoperated carotid bifurcations, stimulation of the carotid sinus may lead to significant hemodynamic instability with profound bradycardia and hypotension, despite pre-medication with anticholinergics (atropine or glycopyrrolate). Vasopressors such as phenylephrine (10–100 mg per minute intravenously) and dopamine (5–15 µg per kilogram per minute intravenously) should be pre-drawn and available in case hypotension does not respond to fluid administration and anticholinergics. Sustained bradycardia is unusual, but a temporary transvenous pacemaker should be readily available. Hypertension should be treated if the systolic blood pressure is >180 mmHg, to decrease the risk of intracranial hemorrhage. A more complete list of complications of CAS is presented in Table 6.5.

Carotid artery stenting: results

Initial experience in the USA included a variety of stents and variable pre-medication and anticoagulation regimens, and the procedures were performed without the routine use of emboli protection. In an effort to address these limitations, one study reported the results of CAS after pooling data from 26 observational studies between 1990 and 2002, which included nearly 3,500 CAS procedures. This analysis suggested that stroke or death at 30 days was observed in 5.5% of patients who were treated without EPD and 1.8% of patients who were treated with EPD. Furthermore, CAS without EPD was associated with more cases of major (1.1% vs. 0.3%) and minor (3.7% vs. 0.5%) strokes. Nevertheless, it should be noted that operator experience, devices, and medical regimens also evolved over this same period.

Subsequently, the Global Carotid Artery Stent Registry surveyed 12,392 CAS procedures in 11,243 patients from 53 sites from 1997 to 2002. The technical success rate was 98.9%; while at 30 days TIA was noted in 3.1% of patients, minor stroke in
were roughly 2.5%, and ipsilateral neurological events were observed in approximately 1.5% of patients (Figure 6.8). The Prospective Registry of Carotid Angioplasty and Stenting (Pro-CAS) was started the following year, and showed similarly high rates of technical success.167 However, in-hospital events included TIA in 6.0% of patients, stroke in 2.5%, and stroke or death in 2.8%. The risk of stroke or death was 2.1% with EPD, 2.2% without EPD, 3.1% in symptomatic patients, and 2.4% in asymptomatic patients.

Early randomized trials of CAS compared with CEA suffered from patient selection bias, rudimentary technology, and operator inexperience; not surprisingly, results were mixed. The first trial enrolled symptomatic low-risk patients with carotid stenosis >70%.168 After five of seven CAS patients suffered a stroke, the study was terminated. The Wallstent trial was similarly halted prematurely when the 30-day incidence of stroke or death was 12.1% after CAS and 4.5% after CEA.169 Brooks et al. reported 104 patients with symptomatic stenosis >70% and 85 patients with asymptomatic stenosis >80%; there was no in-hospital stroke or death after CEA or CAS.170 The Carotid and Vertebral Artery Transluminal Angioplasty Study (CAVATAS) randomized 504 patients, but only 22% of the angioplasty group received stents.139 Although stroke or death rates at 30 days occurred in 10% of patients in both groups, angioplasty was associated with lower rates of cranial neuropathy, major hematoma, myocardial infarction, and pulmonary embolism, and with a higher rate of restenosis at 1 year. The rate of stroke or death at 3 years was similar.139

More recently the Stenting and Angioplasty with Protection in Patients at High Risk for Endarterectomy (SAPPHIRE) study randomized high-risk patients and compared CAS with EPD.
Endovascular Techniques in the Management of Cerebrovascular Disease

against CEA; the trial was stopped prematurely because of slow enrollment due to high surgical risk for CEA. Inclusion criteria included symptomatic stenosis >50% or asymptomatic stenosis >80%, plus at least one high-risk criterion (see Table 6.1). Technical success was achieved in 95.6% of CAS patients. The incidence of the composite endpoints (myocardial infarction, stroke, or death within 30 days or ipsilateral stroke or death at 1 year) was 12% after CAS and 20.1% after CEA (p = 0.048). However, when myocardial infarction was excluded, the difference in stroke and death between CAS and CEA was not statistically significantly different. In the patients with symptomatic stenosis, the primary endpoints after CAS and CEA were 16.8% vs. 16.5%, while in asymptomatic patients, there were fewer primary endpoints after CAS (9.9%) vs. CEA (21.5%) (p = 0.02).

Post-procedure care

Post-procedure monitoring should include assessment of the arterial puncture site as well as routine neurological checks in a unit capable of hemodynamic monitoring. All patients should undergo a formal National Institutes of Health Stroke Scale (NIHSS) assessment within 24 hours of CAS, or sooner if symptomatic. Patients who are neurologically and hemodynamically stable (90% of patients) can usually be discharged the following day with continuation of statins, clopidogrel, and aspirin. Aspirin is typically given indefinitely while clopidogrel is discontinued at 6–8 weeks. Patients who have no deficits but are hemodynamically unstable will require fluids, and possibly pressors, usually for 24–48 hours. Patients with stroke or TIA will require appropriate imaging (usually diffusion-weighted MRI), intensive care, and supportive measures based on the extent of injury.

Carotid duplex surveillance is performed at 6 months and 1 year to check for re-stenosis. Anecdotally, personal experience would lead us to believe that re-stenosis is commoner in patients with accelerated intimal hyperplasia post-endarterectomy and in patients who have previously had radiation therapy to the affected region. Before the era of drug-eluting coronary stents, there were case reports of successful intraluminal brachytherapy coronary systems adapted for carotid in-stent stenosis. In the absence of such systems (plagued by both FDA and Nuclear Regulatory Commission (NRC) regulations), there are few alternatives. One promising technology may be the use of angioplasty balloons impregnated with paclitaxel.

Revascularization of intracranial atherosclerotic stenoses

As noted previously, intracranial atherosclerotic disease is more frequently identified in non-whites (see Figure 6.4). Nevertheless, many patients with asymptomatic intracranial disease are identified during evaluation for suspected carotid artery disease. The presence of asymptomatic intracranial stenosis usually does not influence decision-making about extracranial carotid revascularization.

In the recent Warfarin–Aspirin Symptomatic Intracranial Disease (WASID) study, 25% of patients presenting with 70–99% stenosis experienced a stroke in the ipsilateral vascular territory within 2 years despite treatment with either warfarin or aspirin. However, unlike lesions of the bifurcation, there is no commonly accepted surgical option. Consequently, there have been numerous attempts to apply a variety endovascular techniques and devices to intracranial stenoses, many of them not originally designed for this purpose.
Intracranial angioplasty and stenting: technique

More recently, a prospective, multi-center study reported on the use of a self-expanding stent and angioplasty balloon system specifically tailored to the intracranial circulation (Wingspan System, Boston Scientific). In this system, guide catheter access and anticoagulation regimens are similar for cervical stent procedures. The diameter of the stenotic lesion was measured using biplane angiography, and compared to a reference diameter of the normal vessel (usually proximal to the lesion) using the technique in the WASID study. Subsequently, a 2.3F microcatheter is passed under roadmap guidance across the target lesion using a 0.014-inch (0.36 mm) guidewire. The microcatheter is then exchanged over a 0.014-inch (0.36 mm), 300 cm exchange wire for a Gateway angioplasty balloon. The balloon diameter is typically under-sized to 80% of the ‘normal’ parent vessel diameter proximal to the lesion. The balloon length is selected to match the length of the lesion. Angioplasty is performed with a slow graded inflation of the balloon to a pressure of between 6 and 12 atmospheres, typically for a duration of 120 seconds. Following angioplasty, the balloon is removed and conventional angiography is repeated (Figure 6.9).

The Wingspan delivery system is then prepared and manipulated over the exchange wire across the target lesion. The stent is purposely sized to exceed the diameter of the normal parent vessel by 0.5–1mm. The stent length is selected to equal or exceed the length of the angioplasty balloon and diseased segment.

Preliminary results using this technique suggest a far lower complication rate (2%) than seen with previously used balloon mounted stents. Additional evidence of procedural safety was provided in this study by post-procedure diffusion-weighted MRI, which revealed new embolic lesions in only 29% of patients (seven of 24 patients for whom this information is available, all but one of whom were asymptomatic) – a rate that compares very favorably with the 70% rate of diffusion-positive lesions reported after the use of balloon-mounted coronary stents. The dramatic reduction in procedural complications can be attributed to the device design and to the recommended treatment strategy of under-sizing the angioplasty balloon and over-sizing the self-expanding stent to achieve the desired angiographic result (Figures 6.10, 6.11).

Turk et al. reported follow-up (mean 7.3 months) of 93 of 155 intracranial stenoses (equally distributed in the anterior and posterior circulation) treated with Wingspan. In this series, re-stenoses were more commonly seen in patients under the age of 55 years (odds ratio 2.6) and more often seen in the anterior circulation (particularly the supracranial internal carotid artery – 88.9% of this subset). Excluding supracranial lesions, the re-stenosis rate was only 24.4%. Similarly symptoms were more likely to return in carotid lesions (40%) versus other intracranial sites (3.9%) – a much more favorable comparison to medical therapy. In-stent stenosis generally appears within the first 6 months and typically presents with TIA (delayed stroke more commonly presents as a result of failure of medical therapy.) As with carotid re-stenosis, treatment options are limited to angioplasty or rarely, re-stenting.

Follow-up: transcranial Doppler

Imaging evaluation of symptomatic intracranial stenosis is similar to that of extracranial atherosclerotic disease. In the presence of

---

**Table 6.6 Mori classification of intracranial stenoses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type A</th>
<th>Short, focal (≤5 mm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Concentric or moderately eccentric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Non-occlusive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type B</td>
<td>Tubular (5–10 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Extremely eccentric, and moderately angulated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Occluded (&lt;3 months)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type C</td>
<td>Diffuse (&gt;10 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Severely angulated or tortuous proximal segment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chronic occlusion (&gt;3 months)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Endovascular Techniques in the Management of Cerebrovascular Disease

Dissection and blunt trauma

Dissection of the carotid artery is uncommon with an average annual incidence of 2.6 per 100,000 (Rochester, Minnesota...
Subacute and elective revascularization of the cerebral vasculature

The stenoses in the traumatic group progressed to occlusion. These data suggest that the insult in traumatic dissection is probably more severe than that of the spontaneous group, as might be expected.

The association of intrinsic arteriopathies with dissection, including fibromuscular dysplasia, Marfan syndrome, Ehlers–Danlos syndrome type IV, and cystic medial necrosis, is well known. It is estimated that 15% of intrinsic arteriopathies are related to underlying fibromuscular disease (Figure 6.12). In such cases, multiple cervical arteries may be involved at the time of diagnosis, although recurrent dissection is uncommon and rarely involves the same vessel segment in the absence of underlying vasculopathy.

Whatever the etiology, the injury to the vessel results in blood penetrating the intima into the vessel wall, with variable cephalad extension though rarely beyond the petrous segment.

Imaging manifestations

Classically, the angiographic findings have been described as a tapered narrowing that begins in or about the carotid bulb and ends at the base of the skull. In addition to luminal compromise and vessel thrombosis, irregularity and pseudoaneurysms may occur. Houser et al. detailed the temporal evolution of the angiographic findings in dissection in 1984. In their series, the appearance of the dissection varied, depending on its severity and extent and the interval between onset and angiography. The disruption initially manifested itself as an eccentric tapered stenosis in 47% of cases, a tapered stenosis and a dissecting aneurysm in 28%, an occlusion in 18%, and a dissecting aneurysm alone in 7%. Subsequently, stenotic dissections angiographically resolved in 60% of cases, improved in 20%, and progressed in 15%, while dissecting aneurysms diminished in half.

Figure 6.11
Oblique views. (a) Before and (b) after Gateway and Wingspan revascularization of a longer segment of atherosclerotic stenosis of the basilar artery (Mori type B).
and resolved in one-quarter of cases. An angiographic residuum was evident in 25% of dissections.

MRI and color-flow Doppler ultrasound are efficacious, non-invasive methods of diagnosis and longitudinal evaluation of a patient with a clinical suspicion of dissection, and they are frequently complementary. Ultrasound may demonstrate both the true and false lumen. The true lumen is perhaps best identified with color-flow Doppler as antegrade signal in the absence of atherosclerotic change (plaque or calcification), and it may gradually re-canalize (in 68% of cases) after the initial injury. Alternatively, the appearance of the false lumen is quite variable depending on the extent of dissection and the presence of thrombus, but it is typically described as having high-resistance flow, which may be forwards, reversed, or bidirectional. A key limitation in the ultrasound evaluation of dissection is the limited ability to establish reliably the distal extent of the flap.

MR scanners may apply multiple techniques to the diagnosis of carotid dissection. Conventional T1-weighted MRI may directly image subintimal thrombus with its high signal paramagnetic effect in addition to the patent lumen, which is characterized by low signal on the basis of persistent flow (this can be best visualized with the elimination of atherosclerotic change [plaque or calcification], and it may gradually re-canalize [in 68% of cases] after the initial injury). Alternatively, the appearance of the false lumen is quite variable depending on the extent of dissection and the presence of thrombus, but it is typically described as having high-resistance flow, which may be forwards, reversed, or bidirectional. A key limitation in the ultrasound evaluation of dissection is the limited ability to establish reliably the distal extent of the flap.

Medical treatment of dissection

The etiology for the ischemic symptoms begins with thrombus formation on the damaged endothelial surface. Subsequently the natural history is one of either complete thrombosis of the arterial lumen or distal embolization leading to stroke in the majority of cases. Therefore, the initial treatment for patients with carotid dissections, of any etiology, has centered on the use of anticoagulation in an attempt to limit this potential for embolization or vessel thrombosis. At this time, no data exist from controlled randomized trials; however, through the use of transcranial Doppler monitoring, therapeutic levels of systemic heparin resulted in reduced frequency of high-intensity transient signals corresponding to a reduced incidence of intracranial emboli. In uncomplicated dissection, the initial therapy remains anticoagulation for a period of 3 months followed by surveillance using either duplex scanning or MRA. If there is a persistent abnormality, anticoagulation is usually continued for a period of 3 more months, with repeat imaging. It has been reported that 47–85% of stenosed or occluded arteries will re-canalize over a period of 6 months with anticoagulation.

In a minority of patients (7–14%), new ischemic neurologic symptoms will develop despite adequate anticoagulation. These are related either to embolization or to occlusion of the dissected carotid artery, the majority being related to embolization. In their review of the literature on traumatic carotid dissections, Krajewski and Hertzer noted a much higher complication rate in the patients with traumatic carotid dissections treated conservatively. Their evaluation revealed that 86% of patients treated non-surgically suffered either death or severe neurologic deficit, while only 53% of those undergoing surgical intervention and correction suffered the same fate.
Revascularization strategy for dissection

In the setting of an acute dissection, there are two indications for immediate intervention. The primary indication is fluctuating or deteriorating neurologic symptoms despite adequate anticoagulation. Additionally, there are a number of patients who are poor candidates for anticoagulation who may be offered surgical or endovascular repair, even though some would argue that these patients may be adequately treated with antiplatelet therapy alone. In the setting of the chronic dissection, there are two sequelae – persistent high-grade stenosis and aneurysmal degeneration – which offer relative indications for therapeutic intervention. Normally, those patients with a persistent aneurysm in the setting of chronic dissection may be offered treatment to minimize the risk of thromboembolization and subsequent stroke. However, these pseudoaneurysms rarely enlarge and there are no reports of ruptured extracranial ICA aneurysms secondary to dissection in the literature to date.222

Surgical treatment of the dissected carotid artery is associated with a much higher morbidity and mortality than is open surgery for atherosclerotic stenosis of the carotid artery; these higher rates are primarily related to the greater cephalocaudal extent of disease. Additionally, there has been reported a higher incidence of facial and lower cranial nerve palsies. The major morbidity associated with the high cervical exposure necessary for repair is injury to the pharyngeal and superior laryngeal branches of the vagus nerve. This usually leads to dysphagia and dysphonia, which are usually transient. Additionally, the incidence of neurologic complications of surgical repair of carotid dissection is also higher (9–10%) than after CEA.222

Contemporary experience suggests that endovascular techniques have a significant role in carotid dissection with symptomatic high-grade stenosis or pseudo-aneurysm. Key to the success of these maneuvers is the judicious use of digital roadmapping in order to navigate safely and access the true lumen with a guidewire; failure to do so will undoubtedly lead to inadvertent extension of the false lumen. This maneuver may also be safer with the pre-operative knowledge of the cephalocaudal extent of the lesion on pre-procedure imaging studies. Given these limitations and the underlying pathologic process, the use of EPDs is contraindicated. These procedures include balloon angioplasty and stent placement in patients with stenotic lesions, and stenting in conjunction with coil embolization of the aneurysm through the struts of the stent in patients with aneurysmal degeneration of the carotid artery. Typically, the self-expanding stents are preferred in this location because of the sustained radial force that they provide. Balloon-expandable stents are occasionally utilized in the higher cervical or intracranial portions of the carotid artery. Liu et al. reported a series of seven patients over an 8-year period who were treated with angioplasty and stenting of carotid artery dissection.231 They placed a total of 11 stents [eight Palmaz (balloon-expandable) stents and three Wallstents (self-expanding)] with an initial technical success rate of 100%. A total of 86% of the patients (six of the seven) demonstrated no evidence of restenosis at a mean follow-up of 20.2 months (1–67 months). One patient who was treated for pseudo-aneurysm of the carotid artery as a direct result of a dissection occluded at 3 months. This patient was treated with a polytetrafluoroethylene-covered stent. None of the seven patients experienced new or recurrent ischemic neurologic symptoms. The mean follow-up for this study was 42.9 months (13–72 months).223

Another retrospective review from Malek et al. included 10 patients over an 18-month period treated with angioplasty and stenting.222 The etiology of the dissection was spontaneous in five patients, iatrogenic in three, and traumatic in two. They used Wallstents in eight patients, SMART stents in two patients, and GFX balloon-expandable stents in one patient (some patients required multiple stents), with an initial technical success rate of 100% as well. The stenoses improved form a mean stenosis of 74 ± 5.5% to 5.5 ± 2.8% without any peri-procedural TIAs, cerebrovascular accidents, or deaths, and without the use of any antiplatelet or anticoagulation devices. The mean follow-up was 16.5 ± 1.9 months, during which time there was one cerebrovascular accident. This complication was in a patient with a contralateral ICA occlusion, and it followed an episode of hypotension 8 months after the initial procedure.224

Schievink et al. reported a retrospective review focusing only on the surgical treatment of extracranial ICA aneurysms secondary to dissection.222 In this study, there were 22 patients with chronic carotid dissections and subsequent aneurysm formation. The etiology of the initial dissection was traumatic in 11 patients and spontaneous in 11 patients. The mean age of the patients was 39 years (21–57 years). Five patients underwent cervical carotid ligation, 13 patients were treated with resection of the aneurysm and reconstruction, and the final four patients were treated with ECA–ICA bypass. In this group of patients, there were two postoperative strokes (9%). Cranial nerve complications were again frequent; they included 12 cases of transient palsies. There were no long-term neurologic sequelae during the mean follow-up of 6.2 years.222 In the context of contemporary endovascular techniques, such pseudoaneurysms are better treated with covered stents (if the vessel is relatively straight) or with stenting followed by coil embolization in cases involving the skull base or where there is significant tortuosity.

Penetrating trauma

The frequency of firearm-related injuries has increased dramatically in many US urban centers.231 It is estimated that there are 7.4 non-fatal shootings for each murder, with firearms fatalities rivaling those from motor vehicle trauma in the USA.226,227

The leading cause of death in penetrating neck trauma is vascular injury.226 However, predicting vascular injury in gunshot wounds of the neck is difficult because of erratic trajectories and the variety of ballistic missiles, which can have different characteristics, and because cavitation and bullet fragmentation can produce tissue damage far beyond the immediate path of the primary projectile.226,230 High-velocity weapons impart kinetic energy in a radial direction, stretching tissue226 and creating a temporary cavity that can be 30 times larger than the bullet diameter.226 Bleeding, shock from injury to the major vessels in the neck, and compromise of the airway are the major factors causing death after penetrating neck injury. Clinical evidence of active bleeding, shock, or an expanding hematoma or airway compromise all mandate immediate surgical exploration.226,233,234

Classification and clinical course

In the absence of clinical evidence of cervical vascular injury, a grading scheme is used to classify penetrating neck injuries on the basis of the anatomic zone of the injury:235,236
Figure 6.13
(a) Lateral plain film, and (b) MRI of a 55-year-old woman with a self-inflicted high-caliber (short arrow) gunshot wound 20 years previously, transecting the left optic nerve (long arrow). (c) Anterior–posterior (AP) Plain film and the coronal CT (d) demonstrating recent self-inflicted small-caliber rifle wound with the missile embedded in the sphenoid bone (arrow). (e) AP and (f) Lateral right internal carotid artery angiogram demonstrating a high-flow carotid cavernous fistula secondary to a lacerated carotid artery within the cavernous sinus. Extensive venous outflow (arrows) is compromising vision in the remaining right eye (g) Clinical image. (h) AP unsubtracted and (i) lateral subtracted angiogram following detachable balloon embolization (block arrow) (j) Clinical image 24 hours post-embolization (notice the persistent pupillary defect on the right).
zone I extends from the root of the neck and involves the area from thoracic inlet to the cricoid cartilage
zone II extends from the cricoid region to the angle of the mandible
zone III extends from the angle of the mandible to the base of the skull.

Although there are no prospective data demonstrating significant advantages of a surgical approach, often the injury zone dictates the treatment strategy. Surgical exploration is often recommended for asymptomatic patients with zone II injuries because such surgery is associated with low morbidity and mortality. Vascular injuries in zone I have the highest mortality rate, owing to concomitant injury to the subclavian and innominate arteries and veins, which results in rapid exsanguination. Physical examination of zones I and III is very difficult, and angiography is often performed in these circumstances.

Endovascular management
In the past, expectant management was often recommended for asymptomatic zone I and III injuries, because these areas are difficult to explore and exploration was associated with greater surgical morbidity and mortality; conversely, endovascular access to these regions is relatively straightforward. This approach is dictated by three factors:

- the hemodynamic status of the patient and presence of hypovolemic shock;
- the neurologic status of the patient and the ability to respond to commands during a test balloon occlusion (Figure 6.13); and
- the extent of non-cerebrovascular injury and the extent to which this may limit post-procedure anticoagulation.

In the event of significant hemodynamic instability, all bets are off: the hemorrhage must be stopped even if by vascular sacrifice (Figure 6.14). Under optimal conditions this would be best accomplished by test balloon occlusion (TBO) for 30 minutes followed by hypotensive challenge to ensure neurologic integrity by virtue of collateral support (e.g. from the circle of Willis). (Of course, this procedure requires an interactive, oriented, and non-medicated patient.) If the patient were to pass the TBO, the injured vessel could merely be sacrificed.

Alternatively if the patient fails TBO, another option would be stenting following by embolization or possibly primary treatment utilizing a covered stent. The presumption in these cases is that the patient can be anticoagulated with antiplatelet agents.

Arteritis
Takayasu arteritis (TA) is a chronic, inflammatory vascular disease that affects the aorta and its primary branches (Figure 6.15). It was initially described by an ophthalmologist, Mikito Takayasu, who reported the case of a 21-year-old woman who had sudden loss of vision accompanied by a wreath of vessels around the optic disc on fundoscopic examination. Although originally described...
in Asia and predominantly in women, TA afflicts people in a wide variety of ethnic and racial populations.

Clinical course

Early reports from Asia described a progressive, inflammatory vasculopathy of the brachiocephalic and renal vessels, which occasionally produces significant morbidity and death. It has since become appreciated as a multiphasic disease; vascular inflammation may be present in patients who appear clinically quiescent, however, monophasic disease is reported in a minority of patients (7–20%). Morbidity associated with TA includes: hypertension (50–75% of patients), vascular claudication (>30%), and aortic valvular insufficiency (25%). Aortic insufficiency leading to congestive heart failure is the most common cause of death (40–50% of mortalities). Neurological complications (stroke and TIs) may result from progressive arterial stenosis or from uncontrolled hypertension; they occur in 20% and 5% of cases, respectively.

Medical therapy

In most cohorts, patients who have active disease are controlled with corticosteroid therapy. However, even among patients who achieve remission, relapse is common upon steroid withdrawal, which may necessitate alternative immunosuppressive agents.

Revascularization

Early studies examining percutaneous transluminal angioplasty in TA appeared promising. In 1992, Sharma et al. reported an initial success rate of 82% for renal artery PTCA in the treatment of 33 renal artery lesions in 20 patients who had TA. The patency rate at a mean follow-up of 8 months was 79%. Similar findings were reported by Tyagi et al. in a study of 45 patients who had TA, with a preliminary success rate of 89% and a patency rate of 79% at a mean follow-up of 43 months. More recent US data were less optimistic, with initial success rates of 56% and a high rate of complication, including re-stenosis in (up to 80% of cases). One factor that has been associated with the procedural failure is the presence of active inflammatory disease at the time of revascularization.

Conclusion

The treatment of all forms of ischemic cerebrovascular disease has changed dramatically in the past 10 years. Endovascular techniques are now often considered a first-line means of treatment for many conditions. Nevertheless, many additional refinements remain to be implemented in an effort to broaden the scope of endovascular treatment to the majority of ischemic stroke patients.

References

Subacute and elective revascularization of the cerebral vasculature


MRC European Carotid Surgery Trial: interim results for symptomatic patients with severe (70–99%) or with mild (0–29%) carotid stenosis. European Carotid Surgery Trialists’ Cooperative Group. Lancet 1991; 337: 1235–43.


Kennedy J, Quan H, Buchan AM et al. Statins are associated with better outcomes after carotid endarterectomy in symptomatic patients. Stroke 2005; 36: 2072–76.
57. Sever PS, Dahlof B, Poulter NR et al. Prevention of coronary and stroke events with atorvastatin in hypertensive patients who have average or lower-than-average cholesterol concentrations, in the Anglo-Scandinavian Cardiac Outcomes Trial-Lipid Lowering Arm (ASCOT-LLA); a multicentre randomised controlled trial. Lancet 2003; 361: 1149–58.
83. Toole JF. ACAS recommendations for carotid endarterectomy. ACAS Executive Committee [letter; comment]. Lancet 1996; 347: 121.
107 Subacute and elective revascularization of the cerebral vasculature


Subacute and elective revascularization of the cerebral vasculature


110   Endovascular Techniques in the Management of Cerebrovascular Disease

Intracranial aneurysms and subarachnoid hemorrhage

Michael E Kelly, Peter A Rasmussen and Thomas J Masaryk

Introduction
The term ‘aneurysm’ comes from the Greek, meaning a ‘widening’, and it most commonly refers to a pathologic dilatation or outpouching of an artery. The most feared manifestation of this condition exists within the cerebral arteries residing within the subarachnoid space; the most serious sequelae of an aneurysm in these arteries is hemorrhage leading to precipitous, and often fatal, increases in intracranial pressure.

Aneurysms have been recognized since ancient times. Premorbid recognition awaited the routine use of lumbar puncture for diagnosis of subarachnoid hemorrhage and radiography to detect subtle signs of mass effect or calcification.

Successful initial attempts at aneurysm treatment occurred in the late 1800s primarily through the use of parent artery ligation (the ‘Hunterian closure’). With the introduction of cerebral angiography in 1927 and the progression of surgical techniques, the first successful surgical clipping was performed 10 years later by Dandy. The evolution of surgical clipping was significantly enhanced by the introduction of the bipolar microscope in the 1940s and 1950s and the micro-surgical dissections that were enabled with the gradual acceptance of the operating microscope in the 1960s. This remained the only primary treatment for the next 35 years, with additional refinements coming in the form of earlier diagnosis of hemorrhage and hydrocephalus with CT scanning (1972), unique exposures, and earlier surgery coupled with aggressive treatment for vasospasm. Over this period, clipping became viewed as safe in skilled hands and durable over the life of the patient.

The digitization of radiology with CT in the early 1970s extended to angiography by the end of that decade. The real-time production of high-contrast subtracted images and implementation of roadmapping marked the transformation of the angiography suite from a diagnostic modality to image-guided minimally invasive surgery. In the early 1990s, Guglielmi, working with Vinuela and colleagues, described an ingenious device of soft coils mounted on a stylet, which could be positioned, withdrawn, and repositioned in an aneurysm until an optimum configuration was achieved, filling the aneurysm while sparing the parent artery. At this point the coil could be electively detached at the leisure of the operator. Serially smaller coils could be nested one within the next much like Russian dolls (a nod to Serbinenko?). These devices have likewise been modified and improved; matched with sophisticated, high-speed biplane digital angiography systems, they now complement surgery by providing lower-risk options for the most difficult surgical lesions.

Etiology
Saccular aneurysms
The majority of intracranial aneurysms are saccular aneurysms. The true cause of saccular aneurysms is not well understood. Saccular aneurysms are focal protrusions that arise at vessel wall weaknesses at major bifurcations of intracranial arteries. It is likely that a congenital deficit in the arterial wall predisposes to aneurysm formation secondary to the influences of ‘vascular disease’ such as hypertension and atherosclerosis. Aneurysms tend to form at arterial branch points or curves in the vessel. Hemodynamic influences and the biologic response of the vessel wall lead to aneurysm formation. If an aneurysm forms along a curve, it tends to form in the direction that the blood would have flowed if the vessel had not altered course.

Other forms of aneurysm
Dissecting (so-called blood blister) aneurysms often form in response to traumatically induced or spontaneous dissection of the parent artery. During this period there were great strides made in the production of variable stiffness micro-catheters and guidewires, which significantly improved access to the intracranial circulation by an endovascular approach.
Endovascular Techniques in the Management of Cerebrovascular Disease

the intracranial artery. They tend to appear saccular in morphology, but they more often occur at atypical locations on the circle of Willis and large conducting arteries. Fusiform aneurysms can be of two varieties: large or giant saccular aneurysms that are partially thrombosed with a serpentine channel through them to the distal vasculature, or smaller dilatations of the parent vessel in which a large portion of the circumference of the vessel wall is aneurysmal (Figure 7.2). They may have a component that appears saccular, but no obvious neck is apparent. Embolic aneurysms usually form in the distal cerebral vasculature, most commonly the distal middle cerebral territory (the M4 branches). They can form in response to pathologic processes involving the heart (e.g. infective endocarditis, whether bacterial or fungal, or atrial myxomas) (Figure 7.3). All of these other types of aneurysms can cause subarachnoid hemorrhage (SAH).

### Epidemiology

#### Prevalence of unruptured intracranial aneurysms

The overall prevalence of unruptured intracranial aneurysms in the general population is between 0.8% and 6%. These numbers can be derived from numerous studies examining prevalence. Sekhar and Heros published, in 1982, a prevalence rate of 5% in a single-center study. A single-center autopsy study by Inagawa and Hirano examined 10,259 autopsies and found 102 aneurysms in 84 patients, giving a prevalence of 0.8%. Rinkel reported that aneurysms are found in approximately 2% of the population if one considers all the available evidence.

### Anatomy and pathophysiology

#### Anatomy

Saccular aneurysms form around the vessels of the circle of Willis at the base of the brain. Approximately 85–90% of them are found around the anterior circulation (the anterior cerebral artery, the middle cerebral artery, or the internal carotid artery). Posterior circulation aneurysms can arise from the posterior inferior cerebellar artery, the vertebral artery, the basilar artery, the posterior cerebral artery, the superior cerebellar artery, and the basilar apex. The specific locations are shown in Table 7.1 and Figure 7.1. Aneurysms are also classified according to size. Small aneurysms are ≤8 mm in diameter; large are 8–24 mm and giant are ≥25 mm (Figure 7.4).

#### Pathophysiology

As discussed above, saccular aneurysms that arise at the branch points of the intracranial arteries or off a parent vessel are usually
Intracranial aneurysms and subarachnoid hemorrhage

13

at a curve and point in the direction of blood flow. The pulsatile flow of the blood leads to wall stress and is believed to cause local destruction of the internal elastic lamina. Turbulent flow within the aneurysm can lead to aneurysm growth. Aneurysms rupture is most often related to size. With the growth of the aneurysm the wall thickness is frequently reduced. This leads to increased wall tension with an increased risk of rupture. 14,16,19

There are several connective tissue disorders that have been associated with intracranial aneurysm formation: autosomal-dominant polycystic kidney disease (ADPKD), α₁-antitrypsin deficiency, Marfan syndrome, neurofibromatosis type 1, pseudoxanthoma elasticum, and Ehlers–Danlos syndrome type IV.

ADPKD affects between one in 400 and one in 1000 people. 20 It is a systemic disease with cystic involvement of the kidneys, lungs, liver, pancreas, and intracranial vasculature. Rinkel et al. 14 recently reported a relative risk of 4.4 times the normal population for developing intracranial aneurysms. Gieteling and Rinkel 21 reported that patients with ADPKD have a familial SAH pattern, bleed at a younger age, and are more often men. The most commonly involved site is the middle cerebral artery. 21 Because of the high rate of aneurysm formation and the increased risk of rupture, screening is recommended for those with ADPKD. Screening can be complicated by poor renal function in these patients. Magnetic resonance angiography (MRA) is generally accepted as the imaging procedure of choice because of improved safety compared with CT angiography (CTA) and conventional intra-arterial digital subtraction angiography (DSA), because of the use of iodinated contrast with CTA and DSA. MRA will reliably detect aneurysms >2 mm in diameter.

Figure 7.2
Dissecting fusiform aneurysm of the basilar artery. While these rarely produce subarachnoid hemorrhage, they often cause symptoms by virtue of mass effect on the brainstem and adjacent cranial nerves. Additionally, the patulous lumen results in slow flow, which may lead to thrombus formation and symptoms of vertebrobasilar ischemia. Notice on these two successive images the layering of contrast (arrow), due to slow flow.

Figure 7.3
A 20-year-old heroin addict presented with seizures and fever. Initial CT scan demonstrated edema surrounding a focal area of ischemia in the right occipital lobe. Conventional angiography confirmed the presence of a mycotic aneurysm due to Staph aureus (arrow). Follow-up angiography after surgery and 1 week of antibiotics demonstrated resolution of the treated aneurysm, but also showed a second lesion in the posterior temporal branch of the same posterior cerebral artery (arrow).
Endovascular Techniques in the Management of Cerebrovascular Disease

peri-mesencephalic hemorrhage, and intracranial carotid and vertebral artery dissection (Figure 7.5).

Intracranial aneurysm rupture accounts for approximately 85% of non-traumatic SAH. The incidence of aneurysmal SAH is between 10 and 15 per 100,000 people per year. This is a generally accepted rate and is derived from pooled data from various studies. 29 – 34

Natural history of aneurysms
and rupture

Head trauma is the most common cause of SAH. 27–28 Other etiologies include aneurysms, arteriovenous malformations, peri-mesencephalic hemorrhage, and intracranial carotid and vertebral artery dissection (Figure 7.5).

Intracranial aneurysm rupture accounts for approximately 85% of non-traumatic SAH. The incidence of aneurysmal SAH is between 10 and 15 per 100,000 people per year. This is a generally accepted rate and is derived from pooled data from various studies. 29–34

**Natural history of aneurysms and rupture**

There are several risk factors that predispose patients harboring intracranial aneurysms to suffer SAH. Juvela et al. 35 published their results in 142 patients with 181 unruptured aneurysms. They followed these patients until death or SAH or for at least 10 years after the unruptured aneurysm was diagnosed. The median follow-up time was 13.9 years (0.8–30.0 years). During the 1944 patient–years of follow-up study there were 27 first episodes of hemorrhage from a previously unruptured aneurysm, giving
an average annual rupture incidence of 1.4%. Fourteen of these bleeding episodes were fatal. The cumulative rate of bleeding was 10% at 10 years after the diagnosis, 26% at 20 years, and 32% at 30 years. The only predictor for the rupture was the size of the aneurysm (p=0.036). However, in patients with multiple aneurysms (the main subgroup) the only variable that tended to predict rupture was the age of the patient: risk of rupture was inversely associated with age (p=0.080). A new aneurysm was found in six of 31 patients.35

The most important study relating to the natural history of aneurysm rupture is by Wiebers et al.36 This was a prospective multi-center study with centers in the USA, Canada and Europe. The purpose of the study was to assess the natural history of unruptured intracranial aneurysms and also to measure the risks associated with treatment. There were 4060 patients assessed for the study. Of these, 1692 did not have aneurysmal repair and were followed. The 5-year cumulative rupture rate was calculated and is shown in Table 7.2. The authors note that 5-year cumulative rupture rates for patients who did not have a history of SAH with aneurysms located in the internal carotid artery, the anterior communicating, the anterior cerebral artery, or the middle cerebral artery were 0%, 2.6%, 14.5%, and 40% for aneurysms (<7 mm, 7–12 mm, 13–24 mm, and ≥25 mm, respectively, compared with rates of 2.5%, 14.5%, 18.4%, and 50%, respectively, for the same size categories involving posterior circulation and posterior communicating artery aneurysms.36

Of the treatment group, 1917 had open surgery and 451 had endovascular procedures. These rates were often equalled or exceeded by the risks associated with surgical or endovascular repair of comparable lesions. Poorer surgical outcome was strongly predicted by patient age. Poor outcome with either surgical or endovascular treatment was seen in patients with larger aneurysms and aneurysms in the posterior circulation.36

There are several criticisms of this study. Posterior communicating artery aneurysms were placed in the posterior circulation group but are generally considered anterior circulation aneurysms. There were a high number of cavernous segment aneurysms that cannot cause SAH, and there were a large number of patients excluded from the study. Nonetheless, this is currently the most important study regarding the natural history of unruptured aneurysms and should be considered when advising patients on treatment options.37

Besides size and location, described above, there are several other risk factors that can predispose the patient with an unruptured aneurysm to SAH. The highest incidence is seen in older patients (55–60 years). Smoking and hypertension have been associated with an increased risk of SAH.38 Feigin et al.39 reviewed 26 prospective cohort studies and identified 306,620 participants. They found that cigarette smoking and systolic blood pressure were the most important risk factors for SAH in the Asia–Pacific region.19 In the Cooperative study, hypertensive patients had a higher mortality after SAH than normotensive patients.40 In addition, use of cocaine and its derivatives is a significant risk factor for aneurysmal SAH.

Patients with aneurysmal SAH have a high morbidity and mortality. Approximately one-third of patients will die before reaching the hospital. The overall mortality is around 50%. Hop et al.40 looked at 21 studies between 1960 and 1992 to try to assess the case-fatality rate. The case-fatality rate ranged from 32% to 67%. The authors also noted a recent decline in the overall case–fatality rate and attributed this to improved management of patients with SAH, which may be attributable to a trend towards early treatment of the aneurysm and advances in neurocritical care.

Clinical presentation of aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage

Patients can present for evaluation secondary to rupture (SAH), headache, mass effect (e.g. a cranial nerve deficit), seizure, or an incidental finding on imaging for some other reason. By far the most common presentation is SAH, usually accompanied by severe headache, nausea, and vomiting. With aneurysm rupture there is a significant and sudden increase in intracranial pressure. Arterial blood is released into the subarachnoid space, where it produces a chemical meningitis. Intracerebral hematoma formation can occur if the aneurysm ruptures from a point on the dome that points toward the brain parenchyma. This presentation is so stereotypical that focal neurologic deficit with or without headache that is associated with nausea or vomiting should be assumed to be hemorrhage in the intracranial compartment until proven otherwise by CT scanning. Over 90% of patients with SAH will complain of headache, and it is usually described as the worst headache of their life. The headache is often accompanied by meningeal and photophobia and the patient will prefer to keep the eyes closed. More profound impact on the level of consciousness can occur with hemorrhage, including lethargy, stupor, and coma. Occasionally, there will be a focal neurologic deficit such as a cranial nerve palsy (e.g. III nerve palsy) or a hemiparesis or visual field defect. Headache without associated hemorrhage is usually new for the non-headache patient and different or more severe for the known cephalic. The location of the headache will depend on the location of the aneurysm, but it is most commonly seen with posterior communicating artery aneurysms, in which case the headache will be unilateral and retro-orbital. Unruptured aneurysms with
associated headache should be treated expeditiously as there is an increased risk of hemorrhage in this setting. Seizures are an uncommon presentation for unruptured aneurysms and are usually secondary to a large or giant aneurysm that exerts mass effect, with accompanying edema, on the temporal lobe. Complete or partial III cranial nerve palsies in a non-diabetic should prompt an immediate imaging evaluation looking for a posterior communicating artery or a superior cerebellar artery aneurysm. Approximately 25% of patients will have preterinal or subhyloid hemorrhages. The hunt for the etiology of the SAH should culminate in catheter angiography if no aneurysm is disclosed on less invasive imaging studies such as CTA or MRA. Patients are graded clinically using either the Hunt-Hess Scale (Table 7.3) or the World Federation of Neurological Surgeons Subarachnoid Hemorrhage Grading System (WFNS) (Table 7.4). These scales are based on the Glasgow Coma Score (GCS) (Table 7.5).

**Table 7.3** Hunt–Hess classification of subarachnoid hemorrhage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Asymptomatic, or mild headache and slight nuchal rigidity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Cranial nerve palsy (e.g., III, VI), moderate to severe headache, nuchal rigidity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Mild focal deficit, lethargy, or confusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Stupor, moderate to severe hemiparesis, early decerebrate rigidity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Deep coma, decerebrate rigidity, moribund appearance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Add one grade for serious systemic disease (e.g., hypertension, diabetes mellitus, severe atherosclerosis, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease) or severe vasospasm on arteriography.

Modified classification adds the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Unruptured aneurysm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1a</td>
<td>No acute meningeal or brain reaction, but with fixed neurologic deficit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Original paper did not consider patient’s age, site of aneurysm, or time since bleed; patients were graded on admission and pre-operatively.

From Shaibani et al.41

**Table 7.4** World Federation of Neurological Surgeons Subarachnoid Hemorrhage Grading System

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>GCS Score</th>
<th>Major focal deficit*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>13–14</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>13–14</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>7–12</td>
<td>+ or –</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>3–6</td>
<td>+ or –</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GCS, Glasgow Coma Scale (see Table 7.5)
*aphasia, hemiparesis or hemiplegia (+, present; –, absent)
†intact aneurysm

From Teasdale et al.42

**Table 7.5** Glasgow Coma Score (GCS)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Score*</th>
<th>Best eye opening</th>
<th>Best verbal</th>
<th>Best motor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Obeyes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Oriented</td>
<td>Localizes pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Spontaneous</td>
<td>Confused</td>
<td>Withdraws to pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>To speech</td>
<td>Inappropriate</td>
<td>Flexion (decorticate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>To pain’</td>
<td>Incomprehensible</td>
<td>Extensor (decerebrate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None§</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technically, this is a scale of impaired consciousness, whereas ‘coma’ implies unresponsiveness.

*Range of total points: 3 (worst) to 15 (normal)
†When testing eye opening to pain, use peripheral stimulus (the grimace associated with central pain may cause eye closure)
‡If no motor response, it is important to exclude spinal cord transection

From Teasdale et al.43

**Direct complications from aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage**

**Re-bleeding**

Re-bleeding is the third most common cause of death from aneurysmal SAH. The rate of re-bleeding is highest within the first 24 hours (4%), with a rate of 1.5% over the first 2 weeks.39 By 6 months the risk of re-bleeding is 50% without treatment. After 6 months, the re-bleeding rate levels off to approximately 3% per year.39 When re-rupture does occur it is often fatal or associated with significant neurological deficit.40 There is an 80% mortality associated with re-bleeding. The goal of early treatment is to prevent re-bleeding by securing the aneurysm by either surgical or endovascular techniques.

**Vasospasm**

Vasospasm is the leading cause of morbidity and mortality in patients with SAH. The incidence of vasospasm increases with the volume of SAH.44 Approximately 50–70% of patients will have angiographic evidence of vasospasm, 20–30% will have clinical symptoms from vasospasm, and 10–15% are left with permanent neurological sequelae.45

Vasospasm usually occurs within a defined time period after SAH from day 4 to day 14. The etiology of vasospasm is not clear but is related to the release of red blood cells and subsequently oxyhemoglobin into the subarachnoid space. Several other theories also exist.48–51

Two forms of vasospasm exist. One is radiographic vasospasm. In this form, the patient has no neurologic symptoms referable to the spasm, but vascular imaging studies such as transcranial Doppler, MRA, or CTA suggest narrowed vessel luminal diameters. Clinical vasospasm represents the form that occurs when patients have new neurologic symptoms in conjunction with imaging studies that suggest narrowed vascular lumen diameters. In addition, other causes of neurologic deterioration such as
Intracranial aneurysms and subarachnoid hemorrhage

Intracranial aneurysms and subarachnoid hemorrhage (SAH) related to the amount of intraventricular and subarachnoid blood. Early treatment of hydrocephalus is performed by external ventricular drainage. It should be considered in all poor grade patients because significant improvement can be observed after such management.

Seizures

Seizures develop in approximately 5% of SAH patients. They usually occur within the first 2 weeks after SAH and have the highest incidence during the first 24 hours. Prophylactic anticonvulsant use remains controversial but is often considered to reduce the risk of seizure before the securing of the aneurysm. Recent data suggest that anticonvulsants should be used for at least 3 days after SAH providing that the aneurysm has been secured.

Diagnosis of aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage

As mentioned above, there is often a high degree of clinical suspicion that prompts further investigations. The first test to be performed is a plain CT scan of the brain. The amount of SAH can be scored using the scale by Fisher et al. (Table 7.6).

Calcium-channel blockers have been studied in aneurysmal SAH. Several large randomized studies have been performed analyzing the effect of nimodipine on vasospasm. The British Aneurysmal Nimodipine Trial (BRANT) showed that there was no significant change in the angiographic appearance of vasospasm, but the rate of poor outcome and stroke decreased from 33% to 20% when nimodipine was given for 21 days after SAH. It is standard care to give nimodipine to all patients with aneurysmal SAH. Recent data suggest that good grade patients can have an abbreviated course of nimodipine.

Hydrocephalus

Hydrocephalus is common in patients with aneurysmal SAH (with a rate of 25–70%). The development of hydrocephalus is related to the amount of intraventricular and subarachnoid blood. Early treatment of hydrocephalus is performed by external ventricular drainage. It should be considered in all poor grade patients because significant improvement can be observed after such management.

Seizures

Seizures develop in approximately 5% of SAH patients. They usually occur within the first 2 weeks after SAH and have the highest incidence during the first 24 hours. Prophylactic anticonvulsant use remains controversial but is often considered to reduce the risk of seizure before the securing of the aneurysm. Recent data suggest that anticonvulsants should be used for at least 3 days after SAH providing that the aneurysm has been secured.

Diagnosis of aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage

As mentioned above, there is often a high degree of clinical suspicion that prompts further investigations. The first test to be performed is a plain CT scan of the brain. The amount of SAH can be scored using the scale by Fisher et al. (Table 7.6).

Calcium-channel blockers have been studied in aneurysmal SAH. Several large randomized studies have been performed analyzing the effect of nimodipine on vasospasm. The British Aneurysmal Nimodipine Trial (BRANT) showed that there was no significant change in the angiographic appearance of vasospasm, but the rate of poor outcome and stroke decreased from 33% to 20% when nimodipine was given for 21 days after SAH. It is standard care to give nimodipine to all patients with aneurysmal SAH. Recent data suggest that good grade patients can have an abbreviated course of nimodipine.

Hydrocephalus

Hydrocephalus is common in patients with aneurysmal SAH (with a rate of 25–70%). The development of hydrocephalus is related to the amount of intraventricular and subarachnoid blood. Early treatment of hydrocephalus is performed by external ventricular drainage. It should be considered in all poor grade patients because significant improvement can be observed after such management.

Seizures

Seizures develop in approximately 5% of SAH patients. They usually occur within the first 2 weeks after SAH and have the highest incidence during the first 24 hours. Prophylactic anticonvulsant use remains controversial but is often considered to reduce the risk of seizure before the securing of the aneurysm. Recent data suggest that anticonvulsants should be used for at least 3 days after SAH providing that the aneurysm has been secured.

Diagnosis of aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage

As mentioned above, there is often a high degree of clinical suspicion that prompts further investigations. The first test to be performed is a plain CT scan of the brain. The amount of SAH can be scored using the scale by Fisher et al. (Table 7.6).

Calcium-channel blockers have been studied in aneurysmal SAH. Several large randomized studies have been performed analyzing the effect of nimodipine on vasospasm. The British Aneurysmal Nimodipine Trial (BRANT) showed that there was no significant change in the angiographic appearance of vasospasm, but the rate of poor outcome and stroke decreased from 33% to 20% when nimodipine was given for 21 days after SAH. It is standard care to give nimodipine to all patients with aneurysmal SAH. Recent data suggest that good grade patients can have an abbreviated course of nimodipine.
Endovascular Techniques in the Management of Cerebrovascular Disease

Placement performed in patients who have hydrocephalus requiring drainage or who are Hunt–Hess grade 3 or greater. The majority of middle cerebral artery aneurysms have a wide neck, limiting the potential for acute endovascular coiling, while the location within the Sylvian fissure is readily amenable to surgical exposure and clipping. Otherwise, strategy is guided by the International Subarachnoid Hemorrhage Trial (ISAT), which suggests improved acute clinical outcome with endovascular coiling. However, if successful coiling cannot be performed or is judged too difficult on anatomic grounds, surgery is then performed.

In the 2002 ISAT, a randomized, multi-center study compared the safety and efficacy of endovascular coiling to standard neurosurgery clipping for good grade patients after aneurysmal SAH. ISAT has significantly changed the manner in which ruptured aneurysms should be managed. In ISAT, 2143 patients were enrolled at centers mainly from the UK, Europe and Canada. Patients were candidates for the trial when it was deemed that either coiling or clipping were appropriate methods for treatment. The two study groups were similar in baseline characteristics. Endovascular specialists were required to have previously treated 30 or more aneurysms. The experience of the surgeons was not described. The primary outcome was the proportion of patients with a modified Rankin score of 3–6 (dead or disabled) at 1 year. The trial was halted by the steering committee because of a statistically better outcome in the endovascularly treated patients. There were 190 of 801 (23.7%) patients allocated to endovascular treatment that were dependent or dead at 1 year compared with 243 of 793 (30.6%) in the neurosurgical treatment group ($p=0.0019$). This resulted in a relative and absolute risk reductions in dependency or death of 22.6% (95% CI 8.9–34.2) and 6.9% (95% CI 2.5–11.3) for endovascular versus neurosurgical treatment. The risk of re-bleeding from the ruptured aneurysm after 1 year was 2 per 1276 and 0 per 1081 patient-years for patients allocated endovascular and neurosurgical treatments.

Plain head CT, the lumbar puncture and the CTA are negative but a high degree of clinical suspicion remains. The angiogram must include all four intracranial vessels and include the external carotid systems as well to search for dural arterial–venous fistulae. Figure 7.8 compares CTA with conventional DSA in a patient with a ruptured right posterior communicating artery aneurysm that was treated with endovascular coiling.

MRI and MRA are also occasionally used in the diagnosis of aneurysmal SAH. They are used in conjunction with CTA and DSA to define anatomy and possible areas of infarction related to the SAH.

### Treatment of aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage

#### Patient selection

Surgical and endovascular techniques are complementary in the management of patients with aneurysmal SAH. The decision on the treatment modality is determined by the patient’s age and clinical condition, the aneurysm anatomy, and the operator’s experience. Consultation with endovascular and cerebrovascular surgeons is important to decide on the best treatment for the patient.

Presently, patients who present with an aneurysmal SAH are best managed in the setting of a large clinical experience with both endovascular and surgical cases, supported by skilled neurointensivists. Patients are rapidly assessed and examined; measures are taken to ensure adequate airway protection and cardiac stability. Prophylactic phenytoin is given. CT scanning and CTA are performed, and external ventricular drain is placement performed in patients who have hydrocephalus requiring drainage or who are Hunt–Hess grade 3 or greater.

The majority of middle cerebral artery aneurysms have a wide neck, limiting the potential for acute endovascular coiling, while the location within the Sylvian fissure is readily amenable to surgical exposure and clipping. Otherwise, strategy is guided by the International Subarachnoid Hemorrhage Trial (ISAT), which suggests improved acute clinical outcome with endovascular coiling. However, if successful coiling cannot be performed or is judged too difficult on anatomic grounds, surgery is then performed.

In the 2002 ISAT, a randomized, multi-center study compared the safety and efficacy of endovascular coiling to standard neurosurgery clipping for good grade patients after aneurysmal SAH. ISAT has significantly changed the manner in which ruptured aneurysms should be managed. In ISAT, 2143 patients were enrolled at centers mainly from the UK, Europe and Canada. Patients were candidates for the trial when it was deemed that either coiling or clipping were appropriate methods for treatment. The two study groups were similar in baseline characteristics. Endovascular specialists were required to have previously treated 30 or more aneurysms. The experience of the surgeons was not described. The primary outcome was the proportion of patients with a modified Rankin score of 3–6 (dead or disabled) at 1 year. The trial was halted by the steering committee because of a statistically better outcome in the endovascularly treated patients. There were 190 of 801 (23.7%) patients allocated to endovascular treatment that were dependent or dead at 1 year compared with 243 of 793 (30.6%) in the neurosurgical treatment group ($p=0.0019$). This resulted in a relative and absolute risk reductions in dependency or death of 22.6% (95% CI 8.9–34.2) and 6.9% (95% CI 2.5–11.3) for endovascular versus neurosurgical treatment. The risk of re-bleeding from the ruptured aneurysm after 1 year was 2 per 1276 and 0 per 1081 patient-years for patients allocated endovascular and neurosurgical treatments.

#### Table 7.6 Fisher computed tomography scan classification system for subarachnoid hemorrhage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fisher grade</th>
<th>Blood on CT*</th>
<th>Score</th>
<th>Vasospasm Angiographic</th>
<th>Clinical vasospasm (DIND)**</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Slight</td>
<td>Severe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>No subarachnoid blood detected</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Diffuse or vertical layers &lt;1 mm thick</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Localized clot and/or vertical layer ≥1 mm thick</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Intracerebral or intraventricular clot with diffuse or no SAH</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Measurements made in the greatest longitudinal and transverse dimension on a CT scan performed within 5 days of SAH in 47 patients
**Delayed ischemic neurological deficits (DINDs)

Reprinted with permission from reference 45.

#### Figure 7.7
(a) CT of a Fisher grade 3 subarachnoid hemorrhage (SAH) from a 10 mm, left ophthalmic artery aneurysm. SAH is seen in the basal cisterns, the subfrontal region, and bilateral Sylvian fissures. Hydrocephalus is present.
Intracranial aneurysms and subarachnoid hemorrhage

The study concluded that patients with a ruptured intracranial aneurysm for which either surgical clipping or endovascular coiling are acceptable options have an improved outcome in terms of survival free of disability at 1 year with endovascular treatment.

The authors published their 1-year outcomes for 1063 of 1073 patients in the study and 1055 of 1070 patients allocated to neurosurgical treatment. A total of 250 (23.5%) of 1063 patients allocated to endovascular treatment were dead or dependent at 1 year, compared with 326 (30.9%) of 1055 patients allocated to neurosurgery, an absolute risk reduction of 7.4% (95% CI 3.6–11.2, p = 0.0001). Nine patients had re-bleeding: seven were in the endovascular group and two were in the surgical group. The risk of epilepsy was significantly lower in the endovascular group. The survival advantage of coiling was maintained for up to 7 years.

The data available to date suggest that the long-term risks of further bleeding from the treated aneurysm are low with either therapy, although somewhat more frequent with endovascular coiling. There are several criticisms of the ISAT study. There was a large percentage of patients that were excluded because either surgery or coiling was the preferred technique (approximately 80%). The majority of the study patients were from the UK and there was no requirement for the surgeons to have treated a preset number of patients prior to being in the study. The duration of follow-up and use of a mail questionnaire has also been criticized. The durability of coiling is still not known because of the relatively short angiographic follow-up, although initial estimates indicate that re-bleeding rates are unlikely to negate the initial advantages of endovascular treatment over surgical clipping suggested by ISAT.

**Surgical clipping**

Before the ISAT study, surgical clipping was the standard modality of aneurysm treatment. As emphasized in that study, there is certainly proven durability with surgical clipping. By using an operating microscope and micro-instruments, the majority of anterior circulation aneurysms can be successfully clipped in experienced hands. Once the clip is secured across the neck of the aneurysm and angiography does not reveal any residual aneurysm, the patient is considered cured, although new aneurysms can occur over time.

![Figure 7.8](image_url)

Comparison between (a) CT angiography and (b) conventional angiography in a 63-year-old woman with subarachnoid hemorrhage from a ruptured right posterior communicating artery aneurysm. (c) This aneurysm was successfully treated with endovascular coil embolization. Note the small thrombus at the neck of the aneurysm. This cleared with time and did not require treatment.
The Cooperative Study found that patients had a poorer outcome with surgical clipping after SAH when the surgery was performed between day 7 and day 10. This is probably secondary to the peak incidence of vasospasm in these patients. It is not uncommon for patients to present within this window. Our practice is to attempt coiling in these patients. If the patient presents at post-bleed day 7–10 and the aneurysm is not amenable to coiling, we wait until day 11 to proceed with surgical clipping.

Patients who present with acute neurological deterioration from an intracerebral hematoma can be managed in two ways. At our institution, we perform an emergent CTA to define the aneurysm anatomy. In patients with imminent herniation, clot evacuation and aneurysm clipping is performed. In patients who are more stable, we prefer to attempt coiling of the aneurysm followed by surgical evacuation of the aneurysm. Excellent clinical judgment is required in this situation to determine which patients are likely to decompensate, and surgical clot evacuation cannot be delayed.

Specific aneurysms are more likely to be amenable to clipping than coiling. Middle cerebral artery aneurysms are often difficult to coil. This is related to the aneurysm morphology. The majority of these aneurysms are wide-necked and occur at the middle cerebral artery bifurcation. The neck of the aneurysm often incorporates the M2 branches of the middle cerebral artery and the lateral lenticulostriate arteries. In addition, it is often difficult to obtain a safe ‘working angle’ fluoroscopically to allow the endovascular surgeon to preserve the M2 branches safely. These aneurysms can be formidable to coil and often require adjunctive techniques such as balloon remodeling or stenting. They can be clipped very effectively in expert hands with a lower degree of risk. These aneurysm are more superficial than others, which can makes surgical treatment more straightforward in the setting of an edematous and swollen brain.

Anterior communicating artery aneurysms are another example of aneurysm that often require surgical clipping in preference to coiling. Specific problems related to the coiling of anterior communicating artery aneurysms are the acute angle of the A1 branches of the artery, its wide neck with perforators or branches arising from the neck, and the tortuous carotid anatomy. Posterior directed anterior communicating artery aneurysms are the most difficult to clip because of small anterior communicating artery perforators that are frequently located adjacent to the aneurysm.

Surgical treatment of posterior circulation aneurysm is often more difficult because of limited surgical corridors and injury to brainstem perforators from either the surgical approach or clip placement. This is in contrast to endovascular methods, which work very well for the treatment of posterior circulation aneurysms. This is because of a direct and straight approach up the vertebral artery and into the basilar artery, which facilitates endovascular treatment.

Post-operative or intraoperative angiography should be performed in most patients who undergo aneurysm surgery. In a consecutive series of 200 patients, intraoperative angiography was deemed to be necessary in 20% of patients. In this study, there was a 0.5% complication rate that was directly attributable to angiography. The authors conclude that, given the frequency of significant disease that remains undetected if intraoperative angiography is used on a selective basis and the low complication rate associated with the procedure, the use of intraoperative angiography should be considered in the majority of aneurysm cases.

Angiography is the best way to ensure complete clipping. The aneurysm can be opened after clipping, but this does not ensure that there is not a significant residual aneurysm. Feuerberg et al. reported a re-bleeding rate of 0.38–0.79% per year from residual aneurysm.

Intraoperative angiography ensures that there is not occlusion of either the parent vessel or a major branch vessel. If it is performed prior to dural closure and immediately after clip application, neurological complications can be reduced. To perform intraoperative cerebral angiography a 5F or 6F sheath is placed into the common femoral artery in the operating room. Depending on the surgeon’s room set-up, the right or left groin may be preferred. The sheath is connected to a heparinized saline infusion during the craniotomy. Immediately after placement of the clip, sterile drapes are placed over the craniotomy site and sterile bags are placed over the C-arm. Standard diagnostic catheters are then used to select the vessel of concern. A standard C-arm fluoroscopy unit is used to select the vessel initially and to perform the angiographic runs. Multiple angiographic runs are performed to study completeness of clipping as well as parent and branch vessel patency. If an unsatisfactory clip position is seen, the diagnostic catheter is removed, the clip is immediately readjusted, and repeat angiography is performed.

**Endovascular therapy**

The Guglielmi Detachable Coil (GDC) was first introduced in 1990. There has been a continued increase in the number of aneurysms managed by coil embolization. The addition of adjunctive techniques such as three-dimensional rotational angiography (Figure 7.9), balloon remodeling, stent-assisted coiling, and bioactive coils have further increased the number of aneurysms that can be treated with endovascular techniques. Figure 7.10 illustrates a wide-necked basilar apex aneurysm that was treated with balloon remodeling and Y-stenting with two Neuroform micro-stents.

**Anatomic considerations**

Aneurysms with a narrow neck are generally considered more suitable for coil embolization. There are several factors that are important for determining whether the patient is a candidate for endovascular coil embolization. Aneurysms with a dome to neck ratio of less than 2 have a higher rate of incomplete coil embolization. Also related to this are aneurysms with a neck width >4mm; they also represent a less likely chance of having complete embolization coating. Aneurysms that are multi-lobulated are more difficult to treat with coil embolization than spherical aneurysms. When the parent or branch vessels are incorporated into the aneurysm, the chances of achieving complete occlusion of the aneurysm decrease.

Unstable thrombus and giant aneurysms often have a high rate of re-canalization with coil embolization. A final important anatomical factor relates to the tortuosity of the neck vessels and aorta. The tortuosity can lead to markedly increased difficulty with coiling procedures. This can sometimes be overcome by using extra-long groin sheaths or radial or brachial access for vertebral artery catheterization when the aorta is tortuous.
Intracranial aneurysms and subarachnoid hemorrhage

Intracranial aneurysms and subarachnoid hemorrhage

1 2 1

have a layer of hydrogel polymer around the platinum core. This polymer expands inside the body in a delayed fashion after being hydrated by warm blood. This delay allows for proper coil position and removal if needed. There is a limited working time of approximately 5–7 minutes. After this time, it is not usually possible to remove the coil through the micro-catheter, and often the micro-catheter and coil must be removed from the aneurysm if the position of the coil is unsatisfactory. 74 The fully expanded coils have an increased diameter of 67–107%. This expansion is thought to reduce aneurysm recurrence by increasing packing density and leading to improved endothelization of the aneurysm neck.

Other examples of a bioactive coil are the Matrix coil (Boston Scientific, Fremont, CA) and the Cerecyte coil (Micrus Endovascular, San Jose, CA). The Matrix coil has a platinum core that is covered with a bioactive and bioabsorbable polymer.

Technical considerations

Bare platinum coils remain in use today. They consist of a tightly wound platinum wire that is 0.0001–0.003 inches (0.0025–0.0076 mm) in diameter. The coils have a two-dimensional or three-dimensional configuration, depending on the coil type and manufacturer. The coil is deployed into the aneurysm, usually under fluoroscopic roadmap guidance, and then detached. As first described by Guglielmi,12,13 the detachment of the coil from the pusher wire occurs when an electrical current is passed across the pusher wire–coil junction. The initial coil that is placed should form a basket outlining the wall of the sac of the aneurysm. This is the ‘framing coil’, and successive coils can then be deployed within this coil.

A newer type of coil has become available in which the platinum coils are covered with a bioactive polymer. An example of this is the Hydrocoil (Microvention, Aliso Viejo, CA). Hydrocoils have a layer of hydrogel polymer around the platinum core. This polymer expands inside the body in a delayed fashion after being hydrated by warm blood. This delay allows for proper coil position and removal if needed. There is a limited working time of approximately 5–7 minutes. After this time, it is not usually possible to remove the coil through the micro-catheter, and often the micro-catheter and coil must be removed from the aneurysm if the position of the coil is unsatisfactory. 74 The fully expanded coils have an increased diameter of 67–107%. This expansion is thought to reduce aneurysm recurrence by increasing packing density and leading to improved endothelization of the aneurysm neck.

Other examples of a bioactive coil are the Matrix coil (Boston Scientific, Fremont, CA) and the Cerecyte coil (Micrus Endovascular, San Jose, CA). The Matrix coil has a platinum core that is covered with a bioactive and bioabsorbable polymer.

Figure 7.9

(a) Early and (b) late arterial-phase lateral carotid angiogram showing a large aneurysm of the carotid siphon. Rapid filling precludes optimal demonstration of the neck. (c) Three-dimensional rotational angiography demonstrates the aneurysm neck with high fidelity, facilitating endovascular treatment. (d) Post-coil lateral angiogram.
One major disadvantage of the Neuroform stent is the requirement for the patient to be therapeutic on aspirin and clopidogrel in order to prevent serious thromboembolic complications. This limits the application of stenting in patients with acute SAH. Also, patients that require external ventricular drainage after stent placement are at a significantly increased risk of intracerebral hemorrhage from the passage of the drainage catheter through the brain. We prefer to protect the aneurysm dome with coiling and then re-admit patient in the subacute period (2–6 weeks) to perform stent placement and residual aneurysm coiling.

Neuroform stent placement has been described as mono-therapy for uncoilable aneurysms (e.g. dissecting pseudo-aneurysms) that involve the entire vessel wall. In this case, multiple stents can be placed to help redirect flow through the arterial lumen and away from the aneurysm wall. It is also

Figure 7.10
(a) An example of Y-stenting and balloon remodeling for endovascular coiling in a 36 year-old man with an unruptured wide-necked 10 mm basilar apex aneurysm. (b) The patient had bilateral groin access. A micro-catheter has been placed in the aneurysm and a 4 mm × 10 mm Hyperglide balloon (eV3 Neurovascular, Irvine, CA) placed in the right posterior cerebral artery, and a 4 mm × 7 mm Hyperform balloon placed in the left posterior communicating artery, with balloon-assisted coiling of the aneurysm. (c) The native image shows the distal and proximal markers (arrows) of two Neuroform microstents (Boston Scientific, Natick, MA) in a Y-configuration. (d) Final digital subtraction angiogram (left vertebral artery injection) showing complete coil obliteration of the aneurysm. Arrows demonstrate proximal and distal markers of the intersecting stents.

Adjunctive Endovascular Manuevers

The use of an intracranial stent has allowed for wide-necked aneurysms, long the ‘contraindication to coiling,’ to be effectively treated by endovascular techniques. The Neuroform stent (Boston Scientific, Fremont, CA) and the Enterprise Stent (Cordis Neurovascular, Miami Lakes, FL) are approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for this use in the USA. The stent acts as a bridge to help hold the coils in position inside the aneurysm and to prevent coil herniation into the parent vessel (Figures 7.10, 7.11).
Intracranial aneurysms and subarachnoid hemorrhage

speculated that there is significant endothelial healing that occurs along the stent, and that the previously diseased vessel can remodel over several months.\textsuperscript{80,81} Other novel techniques have been described, such as Y-stent reconstruction of basilar apex aneurysms or other bifurcations aneurysms, trans-posterior communicating artery stenting of basilar apex aneurysms, and trans-anterior communicating artery stenting of carotid terminus aneurysms.\textsuperscript{82-85}

Balloon-assisted coiling involves placing a small balloon across the neck of the aneurysm at the point of coil deployment. The balloon helps to mold the coils into the aneurysm and to prevent coil prolapse into the parent vessel. Several authors have reported excellent results with this technique.\textsuperscript{96-98} We frequently employ this technique at our institution and find it extremely useful in patients with SAH where stenting is relatively contraindicated with wide necked aneurysms (Figures 7.12, 7.13).

There are several types of balloons available. Two commonly used ones are the Hyperglide and Hyperform balloons (eV3 Neurovascular, Irvine, CA). They are highly compliant balloons that allow for balloon-assisted coiling. The Hyperglide balloon is 4 mm wide and has a length of between 10 mm and 30 mm, depending on the balloon selected. It tends to assume a tubular shape that works well in longer arterial segments such as the internal carotid artery and anterior cerebral artery. The Hyperform balloon is 4 mm × 7 mm in size and is often used at the basilar apex for wide-necked basilar apex aneurysms that may incorporate either of the posterior communicating arteries. It differs from the Hyperglide balloon in that it tends to be more ovoid-shaped and will more readily assume the shape of the space that it is placed within.

There are several indications for arterial sacrifice. They include symptomatic cavernous internal carotid artery aneurysm, arterial dissections of the anterior or posterior circulation, fusiform aneurysms, and recurrent aneurysms that are not amenable to repeat coiling or surgical treatment. Complications related to this treatment include unintended branch vessel occlusion, thromboembolic events, and stroke from unanticipated poor collateral circulation.

**Figure 7.11**
A clear phantom of a Neuroform stent spanning a wide-neck aneurysm. (b) Neuroform stent with detachable coils. (Courtesy of Boston Scientific, Natick, MA.)

Deconstructive techniques for treatment of aneurysms

In some instances, parent vessel arterial sacrifice is a viable option over coil embolization or surgical clipping. Proximal arterial ligation often leads to a change in the hemodynamic flow pattern of the aneurysm and can cause thrombosis of the aneurysm. Traditionally, surgical clipping was the mainstay of treatment but endovascular techniques are being used more frequently.\textsuperscript{52} Aneurysms of the vertebral artery can often be cured by deliberate occlusion at the site of the aneurysm, with relatively good results.\textsuperscript{89} There are several indications for arterial sacrifice. They include symptomatic cavernous internal carotid artery aneurysm, arterial dissections of the anterior or posterior circulation, fusiform aneurysms, and recurrent aneurysms that are not amenable to repeat coiling or surgical treatment. Complications related to this treatment include unintended branch vessel occlusion, thromboembolic events, and stroke from unanticipated poor collateral circulation.

**Liquid embolic agents for endovascular aneurysm treatment**

Onyx (eV3 Neurovascular, Irvine, CA) is a newly available liquid embolic agent approved for pre-surgical embolization of arterial–venous malformations. It is composed of ethylenevinyl alcohol and micronized tantalum powder suspended in dimethylsulfoxide. Several reports exist of utilizing Onyx to treat intracranial aneurysms.\textsuperscript{89-91} The Cerebral Aneurysm Multi-center European Onyx (CAMEO) trial was undertaken to study the efficacy of Onyx for the treatment of intracranial aneurysms. This multi-center prospective observational study had 119 patients with 123 aneurysms that were judged suitable for Onyx treatment.\textsuperscript{91} Clinical and angiographic outcomes were recorded at discharge, 3 months, and 12 months. Of 71 aneurysm with available 12-month follow-up, 56 (79%) had complete occlusion. Procedure- or device-related permanent neurologic morbidity at final follow-up was present in eight of 97 patients.\textsuperscript{91} Onyx HD 500 has recently been approved by the FDA, which will very likely lead to an increase in the use of Onyx for treatment of intracranial aneurysms. Further studies are needed to determine its final safety and efficacy. Presently this technique is most often employed in North American for vessel sacrifice in peripheral, mycotic aneurysms where the patients are poor candidates (usually because of valvular heart disease) for operative clipping (Figure 7.14).
Figure 7.12
(a) Anterior inferior cerebellar artery aneurysm angiogram following subarachnoid hemorrhage. (b) Balloon-assisted coiling demonstrating errant coil loop above the expected location of the aneurysm dome. (c) Post-re-positioning of the coil demonstrating extravasation of contrast (arrows). Heparin was reversed, ventriculostomy opened, balloon re-inflated, and additional soft, smaller coils placed. (d, e) Repeat angiography demonstrates good, brisk filling of the intracranial circulation with no additional extravasation.
Figure 7.13
(a) CT scan in a 50-year-old woman who presented with Hunt–Hess 4 status after a Fischer grade 4 subarachnoid hemorrhage. (b) CT angiogram viewed as though the left mastoid and occiput demonstrating a wide-necked right posterior inferior cerebellary artery (PICA) aneurysm arising from a proximal PICA that supplies both cerebellar hemispheres (a normal variant). (c) The approach to the parent artery by the re-modeling balloon is most direct from above (i.e. across the vertebrobasilar junction) (black arrow), while the aneurysm dome can be directly approached from below via the ipsilateral vertebral artery (white arrow). (d) Post-coil right vertebral angiogram.
Figure 7.14
(a,b) Lateral view of a conventional carotid angiogram in a patient with endocarditis. While the early arterial phase appears normal, delayed and magnified views demonstrate a mycotic aneurysm. (c) Selective catheterization of a pial pedicle during Onyx embolization.

Prior to undertaking internal carotid artery parent vessel occlusion, the patient can undergo an ‘awake temporary balloon test occlusion’ to assess collateral supply. Adjunctive methods such as somatosensory evoked potentials, motor evoked potentials, and electroencephalography can be utilized. As technological improvements have been made in endovascular devices, the indications for deconstructive aneurysm treatment have become decreasingly common.

Complications of endovascular aneurysm therapy

Aneurysm rupture

Intraprocedural aneurysm rupture is reported to occur in 2–8% of cases. The result can be catastrophic and life-threatening but this is not always the case. Rupture occurs from protrusion of the coil or micro-catheter or from microwire perforation through the aneurysm dome. Anecdotally, we have seen this more commonly in cases of acute SAH using balloon remodeling where the balloon fixes the coiling catheter in place and does not allow ‘unloading’ of the forward force of the advancing coil by displacement of the catheter from the aneurysm lumen (i.e. the coil is unloaded by perforating the aneurysm) (see Figure 7.12). When perforation occurs, the following steps should be taken: the heparin (if used) should be reversed immediately with protamine sulfate; coils should be delivered to the remainder of the aneurysm and, if present, a balloon can be inflated across the neck of the aneurysm; and the blood pressure should be lowered to a mean arterial pressure of 60–70 mmHg. The remaining lumen of the aneurysm should be coil occluded as rapidly as possible. If an external ventricular drain is not present this should be considered immediately; if it is present it should be opened at 0 cmH₂O.
Intracranial aneurysms and subarachnoid hemorrhage

Figure 7.15
(a,b) Subtracted and unsubtracted views of a wide-necked supraclinoid aneurysm, coiled after stent placement. (c) Delayed formation of thrombus on the stent (arrow), initially without distal emboli (d).
(e) Following intra-arterial administration of glycoprotein IIb–IIIa inhibitors, the filling defect begins to lyse, although in the views of the pial vessels one can appreciate a filling defect (f) (arrow). (g) Selective catheterization of the M2 segment under roadmap with additional lytic therapy demonstrates restoration of distal flow with only a small residual ‘saddle embolus’ defect. (h) Post-lysis.
Endovascular Techniques in the Management of Cerebrovascular Disease

Coils in the parent vessel and misplaced coils

Rarely, a coil can embolize from the aneurysm into the distal circulation. If this situation arises, several measures can be taken. If the coil is small and has embolized distally and it is not occlusive, the patient can be left on aspirin, although there is the risk of more distal embolism. Two devices, the Amplatz Nitinol Microsnare (Microvena, Vadnais Heights, MN) and the Alligator Retrieval Device (Chestnut Medical Technologies, Menlo Park, CA), can both be used to extract coils from the parent vessel. As one would expect, this procedure carries an increased risk of vessel perforation and dissection, but if the coil is occluding a major vessel the risk is warranted.

On occasions is there will be one or more coil loops that protrude into the parent vessel. This is usually not clinically significant, and if there is no limitation of flow the patient can be managed conservatively and is usually placed on aspirin with or without clopidogrel for 2–4 weeks. If the patient has been previously loaded on aspirin and clopidogrel, consideration can be given to placing a stent across the aneurysm to attempt to move...
the prolapsed coil back into position or to trap it against the vessel wall. This strategy increases the risk of the procedure and necessitates post-procedural antplatelet therapy, which in itself is not risk-free. A final strategy is to place a balloon across the neck of the aneurysm and attempt to drive the loop back into the aneurysm. This technique is moderately successful in our hands.

**Post-coiling follow-up strategy and re-canalization**

Until the long-term durability of coiling is known, patients should be carefully followed for aneurysm recurrence. At our institution we perform a 6-month angiogram on most patients but have begun to rely on MRA in some patients. If the aneurysm appears to be completely coiled, the patient is followed by MRI or MRA. If there is residual neck or a slight recurrence, the patient undergoes repeat angiography at 1 year and then at 3 years.

Re-canalization of embolized aneurysms has been reported at a wide range of frequencies in the literature, ranging from 10% to 50%, with an average of 20–35%. Re-canalization is affected by size, with greater stability seen in small embolized aneurysms and lesser stability in large and giant aneurysms. When re-canalization occurs, a decision must be made about re-treatment.

To follow the coiled aneurysms with MRA, we use 1.5 Tesla contrast-enhanced three-dimensional MRA using a three-dimensional ultrafast spoiled gradient-recalled acquisition in the steady state (SPGR) sequence. This sequence provides very clear anatomical definition of the parent vessel. We have found that this sequence will detect re-canalizations >3 mm. The ability to detect aneurysm re-canalization >3 mm is important because this is the size for which we will consider re-treatment. When there is a residual neck, we will generally follow these patients when the neck size is <4 mm.

When recanalization is detected on either angiography or MRA, a decision about for re-treatment must be made. Several factors are important when deciding on re-treatment. The size of the re-canalization is the most important. It is likely that smaller recanalizations can be followed, but they must be carefully followed. Any noticeable change in the degree of re-canalization is an indication for treatment. Large re-canalizations warrant treatment. Re-treatment options include repeat coiling, stent-assisted coiling, and surgical clipping.

**Future devices and innovations**

There are newer devices on the horizon that will expand the spectrum of aneurysms that can be treated by endovascular techniques. The use of covered stents has been shown to be effective for the definitive treatment of wide-necked aneurysms. However, these devices are often stiff and difficult to navigate into the intracranial circulation. The development of newer stents is on the horizon. While not covered these devices have a much higher metal surface area. Also, they are much softer and therefore navigation into the intracranial circulation is easier. When multiple stents are deployed, aneurysm thrombosis can be induced without entering the aneurysm as with coil embolization. However, this may raise some concerns relative to branch vessel or parent vessel thrombosis. These stents are not commercially available.

One example of this kind of stent is the Pipeline Neuroendovascular Device (Chestnut Medical Technologies, Menlo Park, CA). The Pipeline device is a braided, tubular, bi-metallic endoluminal implant. It can occlude both saccular and fusiform aneurysms by disrupting flow along the aneurysm neck or inside the fusiform component of the aneurysm. Currently, the device is not approved for use in the USA by the FDA, but it has been used under an emergency FDA exemption in two patients. Both patients had wide-necked V4 segment vertebral artery aneurysms that had failed other endovascular treatments. (Figure 7.16 shows a patient who had undergone two previous treatments with placement of a coronary stent and balloon-assisted coiling followed by placement of two Neuroform stents when the aneurysm enlarged. After the placement of the three stents and attempted coiling, the aneurysm had further enlargement (see Figure 7.16a). After placement of two Pipeline Emboli Devices, an immediate and complete occlusion of the aneurysm and anatomical reconstruction of the vertebral artery was achieved (see Figure 7.16b). Angiographic follow-up at 6 months and 12 months showed continued cure. The Pipeline device and other new treatment modalities are allowing for the safe and effective treatment of previously untreatable vascular lesions.

**Summary**

Intracranial aneurysms represent unique surgical and endovascular challenges. Surgical clipping and endovascular coiling should not be viewed as competing techniques but as complementary modalities. Patients are best managed in a setting where both treatments can be readily offered in an unbiased manner.

**References**


60. CARAT investigators. Rates of delayed rebleeding from intracranial aneurysms are low after surgical and endovascular treatment. Stroke 2006; 37: 1437–42.


Vascular malformations

Henry Woo, David Fiorella, Michael E Kelly and Thomas J Masaryk

Pial arteriovenous malformations

Classification

Vascular malformations of the central nervous system can be categorized in a number of ways. A simplistic and utilitarian classification is to divide the lesions into those that involve the brain substance and those that primarily involve the dura. Vascular lesions of the parenchyma are characterized by the McCormick system (recognizing that individual lesions may overlap or occur simultaneously). This scheme recognizes:

- capillary telangiectasias
- slow-flow cavernous malformations
- venous angiomas
- high-flow arteriovenous malformations (AVMs) of the pial arteries.

Capillary telangiectasias

Capillary telangiectasias are composed of small capillary-like blood vessels that resemble normal capillaries surrounded by normal brain parenchyma. They are often small (<1 cm) in diameter, they are poorly marginated, and they occur frequently in the pons. These lesions are clinically silent but are often incidentally discovered as areas of enhancement on MRI (in otherwise normal brain) or at autopsy (Figure 8.1). Capillary telangiectasias may be clinically significant because these lesions are thought by some to represent earlier versions of cavernous malformations; multiple lesions (including cavernous malformations), capillary telangiectasias, and intermediate forms of both have been identified.

Developmental venous anomalies

Developmental venous anomalies (DVAs) are the most commonest vascular anomaly of the brain. They are composed of low-flow anomalous veins separated by normal brain. Typically there are a number of smaller veins, which are described as a caput medusae that coalesce into a prominent single draining vessel. This configuration often produces a characteristic appearance on MRI (Figure 8.3). The clinical significance of DVAs arises because they can be associated with cavernous malformations. In the absence of an associated cavernous malformation, these anomalies are asymptomatic and are viewed by some as incidental, anatomic variants of normal venous drainage.

Cavernous malformations

Cavernous malformations are composed of cystic vascular spaces lined by a single layer of endothelium. These sinusoidal vessels form a compact mass with no direct arterial in-flow. Cavernous malformations do not have any intervening neural tissue, and this is the major histological feature that differentiates them from capillary telangiectasias. On gross examination these lesions are well-circumscribed areas of reddish-purple discoloration up to a few centimeters in size; they possess a rim of hemosiderin, reactive gliosis, focal areas of calcification, and pockets of blood products in various stages of decay. The paramagnetic and susceptibility effects of these blood breakdown products give these lesions a characteristic appearance on MRI (Figure 8.2).

Clinically these lesions may be asymptomatic, or they may produce headache, a local mass effect, seizures, and occasionally hemorrhage. This last presentation is believed by some to be related to venous drainage. Given that these are ‘slow-flow’ lesions, the hemorrhage associated with cavernous malformations is usually not catastrophic (unlike that associated with high flow AVMs or intracranial aneurysms). However, location is an important predictor of prognosis. Some patients present with cavernous malformations within the brainstem and deep structures; hemorrhage in these locations, can cause significant clinical problems.

The treatment for cavernous malformations is observational or surgical resection. There is no role for endovascular embolization of these lesions.

Arteriovenous malformations

AVMs comprise a spectrum developmental anomalies, with a unique, but poorly understood vascular pathophysiology. The sine qua non of AVM pathology is arterial shunting to draining veins in the absence of capillaries. The pathologic hallmarks of arterioles feeding directly to nidal vessels have a distinctive correlate of angiographic shunting (Figure 8.4). Variability of lesions,
which can be quite dramatic, can be appreciated as a spectrum, ranging from a compact, tight nidus without significant intervening brain parenchyma to diffuse, reticulated anastomotic channels with a lobar or even hemispheric distribution. Regardless of where an AVM falls on this spectrum, the propensity for it to bleed has histologic and pathologic correlates in microscopic areas of hemosiderin and gliosis (even in the absence of an apoplectic event) as well as macroscopic features such as arterial aneurysms and central venous drainage.7-10

**Historical perspective**

From Rokitansky and Virchow’s first descriptions of AVMs in the 1800s, their management has continually challenged physicians.11 While reports exist of surgical excision of intracranial AVMs as early as the turn of the last century,11-12 Cushing and Dandy both commented on the frequency of poor surgical outcomes.13,14 Nevertheless, Cushing and Bailey presciently recognized, even in the 1920s, that the complexity of such lesions would require a
Figure 8.2
(a, b) Sagittal and coronal unenhanced T1-weighted scans demonstrating a multi-lobulated, heterogeneous mass of the anterior third ventricle. (c) Post-contrast coronal study demonstrating subtle enhancement primarily at the margins. (d, e) Axial fluid-attenuated inversion recovery (FLAIR) and T2-weighted scans of the same lesion. Notice the rim of susceptibility artifact consistent with chronic blood breakdown products. This is a typical MR appearance of a cavernous malformation.

Epidemiology

Pial vascular malformations are considered developmental anomalies whose clinical evolution is influenced by vascular anatomy, hemodynamics and, growth factors. Although occasional cases are associated with other abnormalities (e.g., Osler-Weber-Rendu disease, Wyburn-Mason and the Sturge-Weber syndrome) (Figure 8.5), AVMs are not regarded as familial, and the overwhelming majority of cases are sporadic. The prevalence of AVMs is estimated at approximately 0.01% of the general population, but reported rates range from 0.001% to 0.52%.

AVMs can occur throughout the brain and have three morphologic components:

- the feeding artery or arteries;
- the draining vein(s); and
- the dysplastic nidus or abnormal connection between arteries and veins, which without an intervening capillary bed results in a precipitous pressure sump serving to reinforce the lesion.

AVMs are commonly classified using the Spetzler-Martin classification system (Table 8.1), which is based on three radiologic characteristics:

- the size of the AVM;
- the location and therefore the eloquence of the surrounding brain; and
- the pattern of venous drainage, either deep or superficial.
Upon initial presentation, 30% of AVMs are < 3 cm in size, 60% are between 3–6 cm, and the remainder are > 6 cm in size.\textsuperscript{24} In approximately 15–20% of AVMs, an associated intracranial aneurysm will be found.\textsuperscript{24}

**Clinical presentation and natural history**

AVMs are relatively uncommon lesions.\textsuperscript{27} As such, the literature describing the natural history of AVMs is limited and is composed predominantly of retrospective analyses of selected populations (e.g., people not undergoing surgery, patients with symptoms other than hemorrhage at presentation), yielding biased and relatively variable estimates of the rate of hemorrhage and its associated consequences.\textsuperscript{26} Typically, AVMs may present as hemorrhage, seizure disorder, or migraine-like headache; in addition, they may be discovered incidentally during imaging. Rarely, progressive neurologic deficits are thought to arise from a ‘steal phenomenon’ with diversion of blood away from viable brain tissue, or from venous stasis and hypertension, both leading to chronic ischemia.\textsuperscript{27}

AVMs of the brain are the third most common cause of intracranial hemorrhage and a common cause of parenchymal hemorrhage in young adults.\textsuperscript{28} A first hemorrhage most commonly occurs in patients between 20 and 40 years of age.\textsuperscript{19,20,27,28,30} The initial presenting symptom is a hemorrhage in 42–72\% of patients, a seizure in 33–46\%, a headache in 14–34\%, and a progressive neurologic deficit in 21–23\%.\textsuperscript{27,29–31} Large AVMs, those > 7 cm\(^3\), are more likely to present with a seizure (72\%) than with a hemorrhage (28\%), whereas smaller AVMs, those < 7 cm\(^3\), are more likely to present with a hemorrhage (75\%) than a seizure (25\%).\textsuperscript{32} In those cases where the initial presentation is a hemorrhage, larger AVMs tend to have a higher risk of re-bleeding.\textsuperscript{20,27}
Vascular malformations

Patients whose seizures were the same or worse compared with their pre-operative state. It also appears that seizures may improve after radiosurgery. The relationship of pregnancy and the risk of hemorrhage from an AVM is a controversial one. Horton et al. in their retrospective analysis of 451 women who had 540 pregnancies, reported 17 intracranial hemorrhages. For patients harboring unruptured AVMs, they calculated an annual hemorrhage rate of 3.5% for pregnant women and 3.1% rate for non-pregnant women of childbearing age. The conclusion was that pregnancy was not a significant risk factor for hemorrhage in women with unruptured AVMs. However, there are numerous reports that suggest that once an AVM has hemorrhaged during pregnancy, the risk of recurrent hemorrhage is significantly increased. While there are reports of mothers having undergone successful surgical removal of their AVMs during pregnancy, higher-grade lesions at eloquent locations are best managed conservatively, with special precautions taken at the time of delivery.

Most estimates approximate a 2–4% per year risk of hemorrhage. In the year immediately after a symptomatic hemorrhage, the risk of re-bleeding is generally thought to be considerably higher, of the order of 6–18% per year, gradually returning toward the 2–4% baseline with time. The annual mortality risk of AVM hemorrhage is 0.9–1%, but it decreases after 15 years from the last hemorrhage. With each episode of hemorrhage, there is a 20% risk of a major neurologic deficit and a 10% risk of mortality. The risk of a neurologic deficit is decreased if the hemorrhage has a subarachnoid component.

The location of the AVM correlates with the risk of epilepsy. The risk of seizures is highest in those patients with AVMs located in the frontal lobes (75%), lowest in the occipital lobes (0%), and intermediate in the parietal (57%) and temporal lobes (29%). In one study of 545 patients, 44% of initial seizures were non-focal. Seizures can in general be controlled with medical therapy alone. Piepras et al. in a series of 102 patients, reported that 83% were seizure-free 2 years post-operatively. There were only four

Figure 8.3 (Continued)
(d, e) Pre- and post-contrast T1-weighted studies as well as (f) axial post-contrast scans demonstrating a typical pattern of a developmental venous anomaly.
Diagnosis

Computed tomography

As with aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage, the mainstay for the correct diagnosis of an AVM at the time of presentation is often a CT scan with and without contrast. CT readily detects hemorrhage and it is also very sensitive for calcification that is frequently associated with AVMs (Figure 8.6). On a non-contrast enhanced CT scan, areas of acute hemorrhage or calcification will appear as hyperdense regions with or without surrounding hypodensity representing edema. In cases without acute hemorrhage or calcification, the lesion may appear as isodense, but with contrast enhancement the AVM will enhance intensely, typically in a ‘serpentine’ pattern as the abnormal and dilated vessels fill with contrast material.

Magnetic resonance imaging

Cranial MRI is more sensitive for detecting unruptured AVMs than CT. On MRI, hemorrhages will have varying signal...
Vascular malformations

Figure 8.5
(a) Anterior–posterior (AP) and lateral left internal carotid artery injection in a patient with Osler–Weber–Rendu syndrome. The patient has multiple intracranial aneurysms (see registration artifact from prior surgical clipping) and has evolved multiple pial arterial–venous malformations (AVMs) over time. Two small AVMs are seen in these views in the left temporal lobe (red arrow) and near the midline of the frontal lobe (black arrow). (b) AP and lateral left vertebral artery injections demonstrating malformations in the right occipital lobe and the superior cerebellum bilaterally (arrows).

Table 8.1 Features of pial vs dural arterial-venous malformations (AVM)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Pial</th>
<th>Dural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Congenital</td>
<td>Acquired</td>
<td>Venous infarction risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemorrhage risk</td>
<td>Primary RX endovascular</td>
<td>Secondary attack of arterial pedicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary RX surgery/radiosurgery</td>
<td>Aggressive embolization of venous drainage</td>
<td>Surgery/radiosurgery as secondary RX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endovascular RX as adjuvant</td>
<td>■ Primarily attack of arterial pedicles</td>
<td>■ Strictly avoid venous embolization</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 8.2 The Spetzler–Martin scale for evaluating risk of neurologic deterioration following surgery for arterial–venous resection

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristic</th>
<th>Points assigned</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Size of lesion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small (≤3 cm)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium (3–6 cm)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large (&gt;6 cm)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-eloquent site</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eloquent site (sensorimotor, language, visual cortex, hypothalamus, thalamus, brainstem, cerebellar nuclei, or regions directly adjacent to these structures)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direction of venous drainage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superficial</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deep (any)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

From Spetzler and Martin.54

Functional imaging

Functional studies, such as xenon CT, single-photon computed tomography (SPECT), and positron emission tomography (PET) have also been used to study the risk of AVM hemorrhage, infarction, or normal perfusion pressure breakthrough.24,43 Functional imaging has also helped to document the variability and intensities depending on the age of the hematoma and the oxidation state of the hemoglobin within the lesion. Vessels within the AVM will appear as hypointense ‘flow voids’ on spin-echo scans and are not typical of the normal vascular anatomy of the affected region of the brain (see figure 8.4).34 In addition, MRI allows for the accurate localization of associated normal and abnormal brain tissue, including white matter tracts (using diffusion tensor tractography or DTI), which is crucial for the adequate determination of eloquence as defined in the Spetzler–Martin scale and which is often able to assess the dominant venous drainage.23
plasticity of the motor and language cortex in patients with an AVM. As a result, estimating the location of functional cortex by anatomic landmarks alone is inadequate. Previously, the only method of defining the exact location of functional tissue was by intraoperative stimulation; however, recent developments of functional imaging modalities can now offer a pre-operative assessment of the proximity of an AVM to eloquent cortex and fiber tracts. The most common techniques are functional MRI (fMRI), magnetoencephalography (MEG, or magnetic source imaging), PET scanning superimposed on MRI images, and superselective Wada testing.44–48

Catheter angiography

Conventional four-vessel cerebral angiography remains the gold standard for the assessment of AVMs. Angiography is able to define
AVM features that relate to natural history as well as treatment planning. It is important to emphasize that MRA is not an adequate substitute for conventional angiography. The cerebral angiogram clearly delineates the three morphologic substrates of an AVM: the feeding arteries, the nidus, and the draining veins.

The feeding arteries for cortical AVMs can arise from:
- the superficial pial arterial system (i.e., the anterior cerebral artery, the middle cerebral artery, or the posterior cerebral artery);
- the deep perforating vessels, such as the lenticulostriates, the anterior or posterior choroidal arteries, or the thalamoperforators; and
- high-flow lesions parasitizing supply from the normal meningeal arteries.

The relationship of the feeding arteries to the AVM is crucial for clinical decision-making. The feeding arteries may have proximal branches that supply normal parenchyma before supplying the nidus, or they may be en-passage vessels that provide branches to the nidus before continuing to supply normal brain.
Approximately 15–20% of patients with an AVM harbor underlying aneurysms (see figure 8.4).10–12 The majority of these lesions are `flow related` and form secondary to the hemodynamic stress placed on the feeding vessels, but they may also be seen at or within the nidus. The former may regress with removal of the offending malformation.10,11,12 These latter aneurysms are often implicated as a source of hemorrhage.10,12,13

Only angiography is able to delineate the true nidus of an AVM. The nidus is a network of dysplastic vessels and is in general the source of hemorrhage. The nidus itself can be compact and may contain components that are more fistulous in nature, while lesions may present as a diffuse nidus, with poorly delineated margins and intervening gliotic parenchyma.

The high-flow state of AVMs lead to dilated and arterialized draining veins. The draining veins can be superficial or deep and may demonstrate stenoses or varices. The presence of stenoses is associated with an increased risk of hemorrhage15,16 as is exclusively deep drainage (where the rigid straight sinus effectively limits venous capacity).16

The development of micro-catheter technology and digital subtraction angiography has made navigation into nearly all intracerebral vessels possible. Superselective angiography not only provides greater anatomic detail, but also provides a route for embolization and functional testing with sodium amytal.

Classification, grade and treatment strategy

Numerous grading systems have been devised to characterize lesions and stratify surgical risk.14–16 The risk of surgical intervention has been directly related to the angiographic architecture of the particular lesion: the size of the AVM, the location and therefore the eloquence of the surrounding brain, and the pattern of venous drainage, either deep or superficial.17 This relationship is best characterized with the Spetzler–Martin grading system (see Table 8.1).

In prospective studies, the Spetzler–Martin grade demonstrated a reliable correlation with surgical outcome. Hamilton and Spetzler17 reported operative morbidity and mortality rates for the resection of grade I and II AVMs (< 1%) and grade III AVMs (< 3%) to be very low. However, much higher morbidity rates were observed for grade IV and V AVMs, reaching 31% and 50%, respectively, in the early post-operative period, and subsequently improving to 22% and 17%, respectively, at the time of the follow-up examination. Heros et al.18 reported a similar relationship between Spetzler–Martin grade and outcome. These data form the foundation for most management decisions regarding AVM therapy. Therapeutic options for AVMs include observation, embolization, stereotactic radiosurgery, microsurgery, or various combinations of these.19

In general, for grade I and II AVMs, the risk of hemorrhage far outweighs the risk of surgical resection. As such, these lesions are generally treated with surgical resection. For grade I lesions, because of the low operative morbidity and mortality, pre-operative embolization is not frequently pursued, given that the risk of the embolization procedure may approach or even surpass the risk of surgery. In some instances, stereotactic radiosurgery, rather than surgical resection, is used for treatment of a grade II lesion. The most common example would be a small grade II AVM in a highly eloquent region. Stereotactic radiosurgery is also utilized in lesions that have not presented with previous hemorrhage. Small low-grade hemorrhagic lesions in non-eloquent regions are less desirable for radiosurgery because of the risk of hemorrhage while waiting for the AVM nidus to obliterate (usually 2–3 years).

Grade III AVMs represent a complex and heterogeneous group, each requiring an individualized assessment. The heterogeneity of this category led Lawton10 to stratify these lesions further into three additional angioarchitectural subcategories, with low (2.9%), intermediate (7.1%), and high (14.8%) risk of post-surgical death or new deficit. Most of these lesions are treated with either radiosurgery or pre-operative embolization followed by surgical resection. When these lesions are approached surgically, pre-operative embolization frequently plays an important role.

The surgical resection of grade IV and V AVMs is generally associated with a risk of operative morbidity and mortality that exceeds the risks associated with the natural history of the lesion. Han et al.20 analyzed outcomes in a series of 73 consecutive patients with grade IV and V AVMs. These authors recommended no treatment for most patients in this group (55 out of 73) and reported a relatively low risk of hemorrhage in these patients (1% per year). Conversely, accumulating data suggest that partial AVM resection does not lower either aneurysm or hemorrhage risk and that the risk of future hemorrhage. Han et al.20 observed a hemorrhage rate of 10.4% in patients with grade IV and grade V AVMs after partial treatment, compared with a 1% risk in patients with no previous treatment. Miyamoto et al.21 found an annual risk of hemorrhage of 14.6% in patients who underwent palliative treatment of cerebral AVMs. Wilholm et al.22 observed an increased rate of hemorrhage and death in patients undergoing partial treatment that resulted in less than 90% nidal obliteration. In accordance with these observations, treatment for grades IV and V AVMs is recommended only in patients with progressive neurological deficits attributable to repeated hemorrhage or disabling symptoms, such as intractable seizures. If treatment is undertaken, the goal should be to achieve cure and not simply to reduce the AVM size. The use of multimodality treatment in patients with grades IV and V AVMs can improve eventual cure rates and patient outcomes.

Role of endovascular therapy

The role of neuroendovascular therapy in the management of brain AVMs depends ultimately on the overall treatment plan. In general, five scenarios make up the vast majority of rational management strategies (listed here from most to least common):

1. Pre-operative embolization: embolization as a precursor to complete curative surgical resection
2. Targeted therapy: embolization to eradicate a specific bleeding source
3. Pre-radiosurgery embolization: embolization as a precursor to radiation therapy
4. Curative embolization: embolization for attempted cure
5. Palliative embolization: embolization to palliate symptoms attributed to shunting.

Pre-operative embolization

AVM embolization is most frequently performed as a precursor to curative surgical resection. Before initiating the neuroendovascular
Vascular malformations

143

portion of AVM therapy, it is critical that the interventionists have a complete understanding of the overall plan for, as well as the goals of, the embolization. This understanding is predicated on maintaining open lines of communication with the vascular neurosurgeon who will be performing the resection (or the radiosurgical treatment). The risks of microsurgical resection, as defined by the Spetzler–Martin category of the lesion, should be clear before the procedure. It is important to weigh these risks against those involved with each catheterization and each embolization.

In general, the primary goal of the embolization is to decrease the blood supply to the malformation, thereby decreasing the level of technical difficulty and associated morbidity of surgical resection. A successful embolization is effective in reducing the size of the AVM nidus, occluding deep feeding vessels that are difficult to access and control surgically, reducing intraoperative hemorrhage, and providing better delineation of a surgical resection plane (Figure 8.7).

The neuroendovascular operator must always be cognizant of the surgical approach and the complication rate associated with the resection of any particular lesion and must make every attempt to ensure that the risks of the embolization do not exceed those of the surgical resection (e.g. pre-operative embolization of a grade II AVM that is associated with a very low operative morbidity). The goal of the vascular neurosurgeon must be to achieve a complete, curative resection of the AVM.

The efficacy of modern AVM embolization using n-butylcyanoacrylate (NBCA) has been demonstrated in several clinical studies. Jafar et al.\textsuperscript{64} demonstrated that pre-operative embolization reduced the operative morbidity of large AVMs to a level similar to that of smaller AVMs that were not embolized before surgery. DeMerritt et al.\textsuperscript{65} reported similar results, with pre-operative embolization of large AVMs improving post-surgical outcomes in comparison with a control group of smaller AVMs that were not embolized.

Targeted therapy

With few exceptions, all treatment strategies for AVM management should ultimately be directed toward the complete eradication of the lesion. However, in some patients with grades IV and V AVMs that are not amenable to surgical resection, partial treatment targeted to eliminate an identified bleeding source is undertaken. Aneurysms are identified in association with AVMs in 7–20\% of cases.\textsuperscript{10,52,66,67} Aneurysms may be located on vessels that are remote from the nidus, on a feeding vessel (flow-related aneurysms), or within the nidus itself. In addition, intranidal pseudoaneurysms – composed of an organized hematoma that communicates with the intravascular space – may form after AVM hemorrhage. The presence of an aneurysm represents a risk factor for intracranial hemorrhage in patients with AVMs.\textsuperscript{66} Although both intra- and extranidal aneurysms are risk factors for intracranial hemorrhage in patients with AVMs, the increased risk of hemorrhage in the setting of an extranidal aneurysm may be attributed to aneurysm rupture rather than hemorrhage from the AVM nidus itself.\textsuperscript{66}

Figure 8.7

(a) Anterior–posterior and lateral left internal carotid artery injections demonstrating a larger parietal arteriovenous malformation in the dominant hemisphere. Based on the size and location this would be a high-risk surgical lesion (Spetzler–Martin grade IV). However, venous drainage is cortical (arrows), the number of feeding pedicles is relatively limited, and the nidus is relatively ‘tightly packed’, features that make this lesion more amenable to endovascular treatment.

(b) Post-embolization radiographs demonstrating Onyx cast.
Remote and feeding vessel aneurysms can usually be identified by conventional angiography. Nidal aneurysms may occasionally be visualized on conventional angiographic views. Often, however, only superselective angiography performed using high frame rates can demonstrate these lesions. Nidal aneurysms are frequently obscured by overlying vessels and varices or other portions of the AVM nidus on conventional angiographic views. As such, when an unresectable AVM hemorrhages one or more times, endovascular exploration for a nidal aneurysm represents a reasonable strategy. In these cases, if the AVM is not to be resected, a targeted embolization may be undertaken to eradicate the aneurysm either with a liquid embolic agent (in the case of a nidal aneurysm) or coils (in the case of a proximal, flow-related aneurysm or remote aneurysm).

Pre-radiosurgery embolization

Stereotactic radiosurgery is often used for focal AVMs (i.e. with a tight nidus) located deep within eloquent areas of the brain (Figure 8.8). The success of radiotherapy is inversely proportional to the size of the AVM nidus to be treated. AVMs with nidal volumes less than 10 ml (diameter < 3 cm) are frequently curable by radiosurgery, with rates of cure at 2 years estimated at between 80% and 88%. Often the characteristics that make a lesion difficult to treat surgically may limit endovascular treatment (see figure 8.8). Nevertheless, despite the eloquent location there may be circumstances in which the size of the nidus is unfavorably large for radiosurgery and portions of the lesion may be accessible by endovascular means. The theoretical goal of embolization in this setting would be to reduce the size of the AVM nidus into a target size that is more amenable to radiosurgical ablation. In this setting, the use of a more permanent embolisate, such as NBCA (see below), is mandatory to avoid recanalization of portions of the AVM that have been embolized but not included in the radiation field. Additional goals of pre-radiosurgical embolization would include targeted therapy for components predisposed to hemorrhage (i.e. nidal or feeding vessel aneurysms) and the ablation of large arteriovenous fistulae that are typically more refractory to the effects of radiotherapy.

Despite the straightforward rationale for pre-radiosurgical embolization, very little data exist to support this approach. This is related in part to the extended latency period (2–3 years) required for radiotherapy to have a definitive effect. Of the available case series, many were conducted in the late 1980s and early 1990s, and many used particulate embolysates (e.g., polyvinyl alcohol). The use of a temporary embolisate for the permanent eradication of a component of AVM is contraindicated at this time, given the availability of more durable agents. In this category, the largest series was reported by Gobin et al., who described their experience with 125 patients undergoing embolization (predominantly with NBCA) as a precursor to radiosurgery. These authors were able to achieve total occlusion in 11.2% of AVMs after embolization alone, with an additional 76% of lesions reduced sufficiently in size to undergo radiotherapy. A 65% rate of total occlusion was observed after radiotherapy in patients undergoing combined treatment. More recently, Henkes et al. reported a series of 30 patients undergoing combined embolization and radiotherapy, observing a less impressive 47% obliteration rate in a series of 30 patients. However, in this study, most of the treated AVMs were of very high grade. From the existing data, no compelling evidence exists to justify or refute the usefulness of preradiosurgical embolization.
Embolization for cure

Embolization for cure of pial arteriovenous malformations is the exception rather than the rule of endovascular therapy. Several key variables determine which cases are amenable to complete endovascular obliteration: 1) the experience of the operator, 2) the type of embolic agent, and 3) the angiographic architecture of the target.

Given the uncommon nature of such lesions (0.01% of the general population) and the variability in performance of different embolic agents, it is no surprise that the experience of the operator is a key determinant in the declaration of ‘cure.’ This is perhaps most evident in the use of NBCA where operator selective parameters of sequencing of target pedicles, proximity of catheter placement, local hemodynamics under anesthesia, ratio of the mixture of acrylic monomer with radiographic contrast, and speed of injection provide tremendous variability in the success of filling the malformation nidus with embolic material (while at the same time minimizing venous or proximal arterial occlusion).72

It is generally accepted that liquid embolic agents (NBCA or ethylene vinyl alcohol) provide the best opportunity of ‘casting’ or completely filling the AVM nidus while creating a durable seal of the arterial feeding vessels.78,79 Choice of agent in any given case is often dependent on experience of the operator, local anatomy, and hemodynamics. As noted by Wikholm et al NBCA has a steep learning curve with embolic injections occurring over seconds to minutes.78,79 Alternatively ethylene vinyl alcohol injections may be more controlled, occasionally protracted (hours), which may prove problematic for extremely large lesions.77,80–82

Finally, the architecture of the nidus itself is a key determinant of success. The accessibility of the arterial pedicle to catheterization has obvious implications for the injection of embolic agent; however the degree of arteriovenous shunting and proximity of eloquent brain will also affect the aggressiveness of the injection. Finally, much like treatment with stereotactic radiosurgery, the compactness or density of the nidus in relation to the endovascular access of feeding pedicles will greatly affect the degree of obliteration of the malformation.

Small series with lengthy follow-up estimate the rate of complete obliteration of pial arteriovenous malformations at 16-49%.77,80,81

Palliative embolization

Palliative embolization is controversial, but some investigators theorize that large AVMs may cause progressive neurological deficits, intellectual deterioration, or debilitating headaches as sequelae of the shunting of blood away from physiologically normal brain (i.e. a steal phenomenon).60,74 Given that the lesions responsible for this type of phenomenon are large and typically unresectable, some investigators have advocated partial embolization in an attempt to reduce the severity of arteriovenous shunting and to improve perfusion pressure in the surrounding functional brain parenchyma.64 Although no large clinical series exist to support this strategy, several case reports have described success in small numbers of patients.76,77 Fox et al. reported improvement in limb weakness in three patients after subtotal embolization of large AVMs located near the motor cortex, attributing the improvement to a reduction in cerebral steal.

Endovascular techniques

The success of endovascular therapy of AVMs depends on the equipment utilized, the embolic agents employed, the quality of the angiographic equipment, and the experience and clinical judgment of the endovascular surgeon.

The embolization is performed in a neuroradiologic suite or operating room that is equipped with biplanar fluoroscopy. Ideally the patient is awake, facilitating neurologic assessment during the procedure, although in practice the long procedure times, the requirement for precise roadmap, and the discomfort of intracranial catheterization preclude this. A transfemoral route is used, and a 5–8 guiding catheter is positioned in the internal carotid or vertebral artery, depending on the vascular supply of the AVM. A micro-catheter is used for superselective catheterization of the feeding arterial pedicles.

Microcatheters

Small size is a requisite for access of these potentially diminutive arteries. Catheters capable of reaching the distal cerebral arteries range in size from 2.3F to 3.0F. Two general types are available: an over-the-wire system and a flow-directed system. Both of these catheter types have a hydrophilic coating that improves their performance and the ease with which they can be advanced up a vessel. Over-the-wire catheters require vessels to be accessed with a steerable micro-guidewire and then the catheter to be advanced over the wire until the desired location is reached. Because AVMs usually have high-flow feeding pedicles, the preferential blood flow to these vessels may be used to the operator’s advantage by using a catheter that has an extremely floppy, low-mass, bulb-shaped tip. Such flow-directed catheters move like a sail in the wind and are drawn to the nidus by the flow of blood. Flow-directed techniques work best for accessing the nidus during the early stages of embolization while there is still a high-flow state through the AVM and its feeders. As the embolization proceeds and the shunt decreases, the ease with which these catheters ‘sail’ to the nidus diminishes.

Guidewires

Like microcatheters, microguidewires also need to be small (0.010–0.014 inches; 0.25–0.36 mm) and flexible. Generally, a balance must be struck between the stiffness of the wire (which supports forward pushing or ‘stripping’ of the catheter) and the softness of the tip to reduce the risk of vessel perforation. Usually manufactured from stainless steel or nitinol, the wire provides torque-ability to steer the wire into the desired vessels despite having to navigate several bends through tortuous vessel loops. Movements of guidewire-supported microcatheters are flow-independent and consequently these systems are best suited for accessing small feeders arising from a more proximal, main vessel trunk.

Embolic agents

Before delivering embolic material to an AVM, the operator needs to assess the risk of causing a permanent neurologic deficit. Angiography through the microcatheter after it has achieved its final position will reveal whether any normal brain is being perfused
particles that are engineered in sizes ranging from 50 µm to 1500 µm and are injected as a suspension in radiographic contrast media. The exact size used depends on the rate of flow through the nidus and the presence of intranidal shunts and fistulae. If too much polyvinyl traverses the nidus without lodging in it, an inflammatory pulmonary reaction can develop, with transient pulmonary failure. To minimize this complication, intranidal shunts can be partially occluded by mixing the polyvinyl alcohol with fibrillary collagen or by using platinum coils. When delivered to small feeding pedicles, they will lead to thrombosis and occlusion of the vessel.

More recently a novel polymer, Onyx (eV3, Irvine, California) has been approved for the pre-surgical embolization of AVMs of the brain. Onyx is an ethylene vinyl alcohol copolymer that is dissolved in dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) and precipitates as the DMSO diffuses away. This agent lacks the adhesive quality of cyanoacrylates, and has more predictable set-up, making it safer to use. The procedure of Onyx embolization requires that a stable ‘plug’ of Onyx be established at the catheter tip to prevent reflux. The process of establishing the plug is critical. Multiple small injections followed by waiting between 30 and 120 seconds are necessary to allow precipitation to occur. Once the plug is stable, the material will penetrate into the AVM nidus, often with excellent results (see figure 8.7). As with NBCA, care must be taken to ensure that the venous outflow of the nidus is not occluded.

Staging treatment

The number of embolizations that can be performed during a single session varies with the preference of the operator, the anatomy of the lesion, and the strategy for additional treatment. One potential risk of over-embolization of a large lesion is hemorrhage related to normal perfusion pressure breakthrough — the sequelae of an abrupt reduction in arterial–venous shunting and a sudden increase in the perfusion pressure of the adjacent normal brain parenchyma with impaired autoregulatory capacity.

In a patient with a large AVM scheduled for surgical resection on the next morning, one might perform between five and seven NBCA injections during a single session. Given the much larger volume of Onyx that can be injected from a single catheter position, the number of pedicles catheterized and the volume of embolic agent injected is much more variable and is assessed on a case-by-case basis. If multiple vascular distributions provide supply to the lesion (e.g. the right internal carotid and verteobasilar arteries) and multiple sessions are to be performed, it is our preference to embolize within only one vascular distribution during any given session. In general, for AVMs larger than 3cm, it is preferable to have at least two sessions of embolization scheduled.

Dural arteriovenous malformations and fistulae

Dural arterial–venous malformations or dural arterial–venous fistulae (DAVFs) are acquired lesions consisting of one or more fistulous connections within the leaflets of the dura mater. They account for 10–15% of cranial arteriovenous malformations. Here these lesions will be referred to as DAVFs because the term ‘malformation’ is a misnomer; malformation implies a congenital etiology when, in fact, the majority, if not all of these lesions, are acquired.

Etiology and pathogenesis

Given the variable locations and complexity of DAVFs, there may be multiple etiologic factors responsible for fistula formation. Most lesions appear in the middle-aged or the elderly, far later in life than typical pial AVMs. Specific factors are known to predispose to fistula formation, including sinus thrombosis, trauma, and surgery. There are several cases of documented sinus thrombosis with subsequent fistula formation associated with the involved sinus. In such cases, the primary cause of sinus
thrombosis may be a generalized hypercoagulable state or an infection of a major sinus such as the mastoid or sphenoid sinus. It is thought that the fistula occurs during the phase of attempted re-canalization and neovascularization within the sinus. Given these circumstances, it is reasonable to test for a nascent hypercoagulable state in these patients.

Conversely, not all DAVFs are associated with thrombosis or stenosis of a major dural sinus. Venous hypertension within a sinus may lead to the development of a DAVF. In a recent histopathologic study of DAVFs, the presence of 30µm ‘crack-like’ vessels within the dural sinus wall was described, and it was postulated that steno-occlusive disease of the venous sinuses triggers the development of these vessels. In this scenario, subsequent sinus thrombosis is then an epiphenomenon that occurs as a result of turbulent flow and sinus wall thickening. Additionally, conditions associated with vascular frailty, such as fibromuscular dysplasia, neurofibromatosis type I, and Ehlers–Danlos syndrome, have been associated with DAVFs.

**Clinical presentation and anatomic considerations**

The clinical presentation of DAVFs is highly varied and is primarily determined by the location of the fistula and the subsequent pattern of venous drainage. Other factors include the degree of AV shunting, the presence of venous hypertension, and the presence of venous stenoses or ectasias (Figure 8.9). The two most common locations are the transverse sigmoid sinus and the cavernous sinus (Figures 8.9, 8.10, 8.11). Followed by the deep venous system, the superior sagittal sinus, the superior petrosal sinus, the ethmoidal sinus, the marginal sinus, and the inferior petrosal sinus. The reason for this discordant distribution has not been clearly established. A delay in the development of the external carotid territory and the presence of numerous emissary veins near the skull base have been proposed as two possible causative mechanisms.

Theoretically, any site along the dura mater is a potential source for fistula formation. The primary factor in determining the aggressive, morbid behavior of a DAVF, however, is the presence of leptomeningeal venous drainage, which can engender venous hypertension, progressive neurologic deficits, infarction, and hemorrhage.

Lesions involving the transverse sigmoid sinus are the most common (occurring in 38% of cases of DAVF). The clinical picture can range from an asymptomatic lesion to overt hemorrhage. Common symptoms may include a simple pulsatile bruit or a headache. If there has been longstanding venous hypertension and swelling, the presentation can mimic transient ischemic attacks or ischemic infarctions of the adjacent brain parenchyma. The arterial supply typically occurs through transmastoïd branches of the occipital, posterior auricular and middle meningeal branches of the external carotid artery, neuromeningeal branches of the ascending pharyngeal artery, branches of the vertebral artery (including the posterior meningeal artery, and the artery of the falx cerebri), and the meningeal branches of the carotid siphon (see figure 8.12). A complete evaluation of the venous drainage system should include the identification of any downstream stenosis or any occlusion of the ipsilateral transverse sigmoid sinus, the presence of flow across the torcular, and the presence of cortical venous drainage. Particular attention should be paid to the direction of flow in the vein of Labbé and its point of insertion, since it has significant implications for the endovascular options for treatment. If the vein of Labbè flows in a retrograde fashion, its origin in the sinus can be occluded from a transvenous approach. If the flow is antegrade, occlusion of its origin can exacerbate the venous hypertension, leading to a worsening of symptoms and possible hemorrhage.

Lesions involving the cavernous sinus frequently manifest themselves with ocular pathology (see Figures 8.10, 8.11). The classic signs of orbital venous hypertension include pulsatile exophthalmos, chemosis, conjunctival injection, and glaucoma resulting in vision loss. A progressive cavernous sinus syndrome can also cause extraocular muscle paresis (especially involving cranial nerves III and VI), a decline in visual acuity, optic neuropathy, and proptosis. These are all indications for treatment. Tinnitus and ocular bruits are also relative indications. The arterial supply for a cavernous sinus lesion can include branches from the inferolateral or meningo-hypophyseal trunk, branches of the middle or accessory meningeal artery, the artery of the foramen rotundum, and the ascending pharyngeal artery, among others. A large draining superior ophthalmic vein can be easily identified on MRI, and surgical access into this vein provides a route for potential therapy. Access into the cavernous sinus via the inferior petrosal sinus provides yet another, more convenient route for endovascular therapy (see figure 8.10). Again, particular attention should be paid to the venous phase of the diagnostic angiogram, including intracranial cortical venous drainage from the cavernous sinus into the superficial and deep Sylvian systems (see figure 8.11).

Rarely, patients may present with lesions of the marginal sinus. Symptoms depend on the pattern of venous drainage. Those with jugular venous drainage typically present with large fistulae and symptoms of pulsatile tinnitus and other posterior circulation phenomena. Those with retrograde venous drainage via the inferior petrosal sinus may present in the same fashion as those with cavernous sinus fistulae, with variable degrees of ophthalmologic symptoms. In either case, direct treatment of the nidus may involve a risk to lower cranial nerves and may cause potentially significant morbidity.

Ethmoidal DAVFs typically derive supply from the anterior and posterior ethmoidal branches of the ophthalmic artery and may recruit supply from the distal branches of the internal maxillary artery. The drainage is almost always into pial veins along the floor of the anterior cranial fossa and, ultimately, into the superior sagittal sinus. As a result, the most common presentation of an ethmoidal DAVF is a frontal lobe hemorrhage. Occasionally, drainage can occur into the cavernous sinus, which leads to chemosis, proptosis, and elevated intraocular pressures. These are one of the few types of DAVF that have a male preponderance and for which surgical coagulation of the vein is the preferred method of treatment because of the associated low morbidity and high cure rate.

Superior sagittal sinus DAVFs are rare and are varied in their presentation. Because of the distant location between the superior sagittal sinus and the auditory apparatus, early detection secondary to a pulsatile tinnitus is rare. The presentation, therefore, is predominantly secondary to hemorrhage (subarachnoid, subdural, or intraparenchymal), headache, or symptoms resulting from venous hypertension. The arterial supply is generally derived from branches of the middle meningeal artery, the anterior falcine artery off the ophthalmic artery, or the posterior meningeal artery. Frequently, the arterial supply will be bilateral. Should endovascular therapy fail to achieve complete obliteration, surgical excision should be considered. If surgical excision is performed, care must be taken to identify the patterns of cerebral venous drainage to prevent exacerbation of the venous hypertension.
Patients with lesions involving the superior petrosal sinus, also referred to as tentorial DAVFs, generally present with hemorrhage or mass effect from dilated veins. The arterial supply typically arises from the artery of Bernasconi and Cassinari off the meningohypophyseal trunk, the inferolateral trunk, and the petrosal and petrosquamosal branches of the middle meningeal artery. The venous drainage usually involves the superior petrosal sinus and the pontine and perimesencephalic veins. Even if endovascular treatment fails to obliterate the fistula, it can aid in its localization of the fistula on post-procedure axial imaging and it can minimize the amount of blood loss during surgical resection.

In summary, the location and pattern of venous drainage are the key components in determining the clinical presentation of a DAVF. The arterial supply is largely determined by the location of the fistula, and the venous drainage and degree of venous hypertension indicate the potential for a malignant clinical course. The overall angiographic anatomy aids in determining whether endovascular therapy by transarterial, transvenous,
or a combined treatment can obliterate the fistula, and endovascular therapy is generally the first line of therapy for the majority of these lesions. Should the endovascular approach fail to cure the lesion, it can aid in localization of the fistula on axial CT imaging and minimize the amount of blood loss during surgical resection.

**Diagnostic Imaging**

The preliminary diagnosis of a DAVF is based on its clinical presentation. CT, CT angiography, MRI, and magnetic resonance angiography often support the clinical diagnosis by revealing engorged cortical veins, sinus stenosis or occlusion, hemorrhage, osseous changes from hypertrophied and ectactic vessels, or vasogenic edema from venous hypertension. All patients with clinical and radiographic evidence suggestive of a DAVF should undergo cerebral angiography. If a DAVF is revealed, a thorough angiographic evaluation should be obtained to delineate the fistula location, the arterial feeders, the sinus drainage, the cortical venous drainage, any occlusions, stenoses or ectasias, and the blood flow dynamics. A complete angiographic evaluation may require evaluation and careful analysis of both internal and external carotid arteries both vertebral arteries and possibly the ascending and deep cervical systems.

**Classification**

There are numerous classification schemes for DAVFs, the most useful and modern are the revised Djindjian classification scheme proposed by Cognard (Table 8.3) and the Borden classification scheme (Table 8.4), which are both based on that initial scheme. No matter the classification system, they all focus on the patterns of venous drainage and the clinical implications of presentation, treatment, and prognosis associated with them.

### Table 8.3 Revised Djindjian classification of dural arterial–venous fistulae

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Antegrade drainage into a sinus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIa</td>
<td>Reflux into the sinus (retrograde flow)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIb</td>
<td>Reflux into cortical veins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIa+b</td>
<td>Reflux into both sinus and cortical veins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Direct cortical venous drainage without venous ectasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Direct cortical venous drainage with venous ectasias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>Spinal venous drainage</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

From Cognard et al. 107

### Table 8.4 Borden classification of dural arterial–venous fistulae

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Drainage into the dural venous sinus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Drainage into the dural venous sinus with retrograde drainage into subarachnoid veins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Drainage into subarachnoid veins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtype a</td>
<td>Simple fistula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtype b</td>
<td>Multiple fistulas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Treatment strategies**

The decision to treat a DAVF depends primarily on the clinical presentation of the patient and the angiographic characteristics of the fistula, especially on the venous side (see Figures 8.10, 8.11, 8.12). A simple fistula draining into a sinus in a patient with a mild bruit or one who is asymptomatic is best served with conservative or compression therapy. 109 It is important to continue to follow the clinical course of these patients since DAVFs can progress to a more malignant state. If a pulsatile bruit resolves, it is an indication for repeat angiography, because the sinus may have thrombosed and the venous drainage may be redirected into the leptomeningeal or deep venous system, a finding that portends a more aggressive course of therapy.

There is a subset of patients who are symptomatic (commonly with a bruit) and whose activities of daily living are affected, but who do not harbor aggressive angiographic features. In these cases, a subtotal obliteration or a subtotal angiographic occlusion of the DAVF can palliate the symptoms. An aggressive angiographic cure may not be required and may even impose unnecessary risks. 110

The treatment goal for any patient presenting with hemorrhage, symptoms of cortical venous hypertension or significant ocular pathology or vision loss should be to achieve complete obliteration of the lesion. Even the asymptomatic patient whose fistula demonstrates significant cortical venous pathology should be considered for aggressive treatment. In this high-risk population, there is little evidence to support the notion that incomplete obliteration reduces the risk of hemorrhage, venous infarction, or visual loss.

**Compression therapy**

A small percentage of DAVFs involving the transverse sigmoid sinus or the cavernous sinus can be treated with compression therapy. This involves compression of the involved occipital artery or the carotid artery (carotid atherosclerosis must first be excluded) with the contralateral hand for 30 minutes several times a day. For small fistulas, this may promote thrombosis in up to 30% of cases. 109

**Endovascular treatment**

Transvenous embolization of fistulae was popularized by Halbach et al. and it has been used with good success and is especially effective in the treatment of transverse and cavernous sinus DAVFs. 103,110–112 Venous access into the transverse sinus is generally not an issue; and, even if the sinus is occluded at the level of the sigmoid sinus or jugular bulb, access into the involved sinus can be obtained by crossing the torcular. Consideration of the venous drainage of the fistula itself as well as the drainage of normal cerebral tissue is paramount in minimizing risk.
which will decrease the degree of shunting, occasionally augmented by transarterial embolization of select pedicles. The initial results of transarterial treatment of DAVFs were suboptimal, owing to the low rates of cure and the subsequent recruitment of collaterals. The difficulty in curing DAVFs transarterially probably resulted from the use of polyvinyl alcohol particles and proximal occlusion of feeding pedicles during NBCA injections. Embolization with polyvinyl alcohol may result in re-canalization, while transarterial embolization with liquid agents may not traverse the fistulous connection into the venous side and may permit the re-appearance of smaller collaterals, which may be more difficult to catheterize selectively. An additional consideration is the potential for dangerous overt or occult anastomoses between the external carotid artery and the internal carotid or vertebral arteries; or ischemic cranial nerve palsies could also preclude a safe and effective embolization. In a recent series of 21 patients treated transarterially under flow-arrest conditions, cures were demonstrated in all fistulae without complications. Although the definite curative embolization occurred under flow-arrest conditions, a significant portion of these patients underwent adjunctive embolization with polyvinyl alcohol or NBCA or previous transvenous coiling of the recipient venous structure. This served to devascularize the collateral inflow to minimize NBCA fragmentation, prevent systemic venous embolization, and increase the probability of polymerization within the pathologic shunt itself. This illustrates the complex angioarchitectural spectrum of DAVFs and the expertise in multimodality treatments required to engender treatment safe and effective.

(see Figures 8.11, 8.12). Care must be taken not to re-route the pattern of venous drainage into the cortical veins, which can exacerbate venous hypertension (see figure 8.9). For transverse sinus fistulae, particular attention must be paid to the vein of Labbé. If flow in this vein is antegrade, embolization cannot proceed across the origin of the vein without compromising normal venous drainage. However, if it is retrograde, occlusion across the vein of Labbé is ultimately tolerated and indeed may be required to provide a definitive cure.

There are many methods of occluding the sinus with balloons or coils. Advocates of balloon occlusion espouse the advantage of possible balloon test occlusion of the sinus. Unlike arterial infarction, however, venous infarction generally does not occur for hours, and occasionally days, after the permanent occlusion. A short temporary period of balloon occlusion therefore does not suggest that the patient will tolerate long-term occlusion. Indeed, clinical symptoms (especially with cavernous sinus lesions) may transiently worsen following transvenous embolization, requiring frequent monitoring and adjunctive pharmacologic treatment (e.g. corticosteroids). Furthermore, placement of a detachable balloon against the blood flow into a sinus may not be technically feasible in every case and certainly will not be possible for Borden Type III DAVFs, in which the drainage occurs directly into subarachnoid veins (see figure 8.9).

The alternative to balloons is coil occlusion. Unfortunately, even dense packing with coils may not permanently occlude the fistula and further thrombosis within the coil mass itself may be required. Currently, we favor coil embolization of the sinus, which will decrease the degree of shunting, occasionally augmented by transarterial embolization of select pedicles.

The initial results of transarterial treatment of DAVFs were suboptimal, owing to the low rates of cure and the subsequent recruitment of collaterals. The difficulty in curing DAVFs transarterially probably resulted from the use of polyvinyl alcohol particles and proximal occlusion of feeding pedicles during NBCA injections. Embolization with polyvinyl alcohol may result in re-canalization, while transarterial embolization with liquid agents may not traverse the fistulous connection into the venous side and may permit the re-appearance of smaller collaterals, which may be more difficult to catheterize selectively. An additional consideration is the potential for dangerous overt or occult anastomoses between the external carotid artery and the internal carotid or vertebral arteries; or ischemic cranial nerve palsies could also preclude a safe and effective embolization. In a recent series of 21 patients treated transarterially under flow-arrest conditions, cures were demonstrated in all fistulae without complications. Although the definite curative embolization occurred under flow-arrest conditions, a significant portion of these patients underwent adjunctive embolization with polyvinyl alcohol or NBCA or previous transvenous coiling of the recipient venous structure. This served to devascularize the collateral inflow to minimize NBCA fragmentation, prevent systemic venous embolization, and increase the probability of polymerization within the pathologic shunt itself. This illustrates the complex angioarchitectural spectrum of DAVFs and the expertise in multimodality treatments required to engender treatment safe and effective.

Figure 8.10
(a) Early and delayed right common carotid artery injection demonstrating early arterial–venous shunting to the cavernous sinus (red arrow) due to a dural fistula fed by small branches of the internal maxillary artery and dural branches of the carotid siphon. Of particular note is the large inferior petrosal sinus, which connects to the internal jugular vein well below the foramen magnum (black arrow). (b) Lateral right common carotid angiogram following inferior petrosal venous access and coil embolization of the ophthalmic veins and cavernous sinus. In the absence of venous outflow to perpetuate the shunt, the lesion is no longer present. Misregistration artifact denotes the presence of the venous coils (red arrows)
Vascular malformations

Figure 8.11
(a) Anterior–posterior (AP) and lateral left carotid artery injection in an elderly woman demonstrating early filling of the cavernous sinus and superior ophthalmic veins consistent with a dural carotid cavernous fistula. The AP view hints at a patent inferior petrosal sinus (white arrow), this is actually the angular vein, which is extracranial and lies over the maxilla. The lateral view demonstrates the inferior petrosal sinus to be occluded. (b) While orbital catheterization via the angular vein has been reported, the angulation at the trochlea typically makes this an arduous task. An accommodating and skilled ophthalmologic surgeon can obtain direct access to the orbit via the superior ophthalmic vein (red arrow) cut-down, as shown here in the AP and lateral radiographs. As is often the case with these lesions, the arterial supply as well as the venous drainage may be bilateral, and it may require bilateral coiling. Note the micro-catheter accessing the side opposite the cut-down via the circular sinus (white arrow). (c) AP radiograph (left) and lateral left common carotid artery angiogram (right) demonstrating bilateral coil mass as well as cessation of shunting.

Recently, reports have appeared using Onyx for transarterial embolization of dural AVFs. Accessibility of the feeding pedicles in conjunction with a higher threshold for reflux (of less concern outside the pial circulation) probably accounts for the excellent penetration of the fistula and the good clinical results. Nevertheless, one must remain vigilant in the event of cortical venous reflux, as this may pose a risk of intracranial hemorrhage. Surgical treatment
Unlike pial AVMs of the brain or spinal cord, the venous drainage of a DAVF can frequently be safely ligated, excised, or occluded prior to occlusion of all the arterial pedicles. However, profuse bleeding can occur during the exposure and bone flap elevation, owing to the arterialized dura, the pedicles, and drainage into the intradiploic vascular channels. Sinus skeletonization or
Excision of DAVFs should be reserved for those cases in which endovascular therapy has failed to effect a cure but has at least decreased the flow to reduce blood loss. Surgical access of a recipient venous structure, such as the superior ophthalmic vein for cavernous DAVFs, to deliver endovascular materials continues to play a significant role. As previously mentioned, for ethmoidal DAVFS and some petrosal sinus DAVFS, surgical excision of the draining vein is the primary treatment modality.

In a recent series, 34 patients with primarily transverse sigmoid, superior sagittal, or superior petrosal sinus DAVFs were cured by surgical treatment. The authors separated their patient population into two groups depending on whether the fistulous drainage occurred purely through leptomeningeal veins (non-sinus fistulae) or whether the fistula drained into a sinus with retrograde flow into the leptomeningeal circulation (sinus fistulae). In the former scenario, the surgical treatment required a disconnection of the draining veins at the point where they exited the dural wall of the sinus. In the latter, a surgical excision of the involved sinus segment after preoperative embolization represented a safe and definitive treatment because this segment did not serve to drain the normal cerebrovascular. Their cure rate was 100%, and there were no instances of mortality or permanent morbidity. Again, the treatment goals were determined by a careful evaluation of the venous anatomy, and the importance of pre-operative embolization was emphasized.

Radiosurgery

The role of stereotactic radiosurgery in the treatment of DAVFs is continuing to develop, and the experience with this modality is growing. Owing to the complex nature of DAVFs and the relatively small number of patients in each series, the rate of angiographic obliteration is still uncertain. It does appear, however, that the complication rates of the initial treatment are relatively low. However, there is the possibility of hemorrhage or symptomatic clinical events that could occur from the time of treatment until obliteration is obtained. This may be untenable for patients who present with hemorrhage, significant venous hypertension, or high-risk angiographic profiles.

Owing to the relative efficacy of endovascular and surgical treatment of these lesions, we view stereotactic radiosurgery as the third-line treatment modality. There will be, however, a relatively small patient population in whom endovascular or surgical treatment may be extremely difficult or risky, including the elderly population with significant comorbidities, and in such patients stereotactic radiosurgery may play a role.

Conclusions

DAVFs comprise a highly complex series of lesions, both clinically and angiographically. The clinical presentation can range

---

**Figure 8.12**
(a) Lateral carotid angiograms demonstrating a tentorial dural arterial–venous malformation fed from the tentorial branch of the internal carotid artery (red arrow), a solitary draining varix (black arrows), with ultimate communication to the sigmoid sinus (open arrow).
(b) Unsubtracted carotid angiogram post-coiling of the varix (arrow) demonstrating occlusion of the shunt.
Vascular malformations

from being asymptomatic to causing devastating intracranial hemorrhage. The location of the fistula is a primary factor in determining the method of presentation. Angiographically, the pattern of venous drainage is the main factor in determining the ultimate prognosis. The goal of therapy for any DAVF that exhibits or displays cortical venous drainage or cause ocular compromise should be angiographic obliteration and cure. The method of treatment will be highly individualized to the angiographic architecture of each DAVF, and can consist of endovascular therapy, surgery, or a combination of methods to achieve the appropriate treatment goal and to minimize risk.

In general, we feel that the endovascular approach is the primary mode of therapy for transverse sinus, cavernous, superior sagittal, and petrosal sinus fistulas and that surgery is the primary mode of therapy for ethmoidal DAVFs. Stereotactic radiosurgery should be reserved for lesions where endovascular or surgical options have failed or would subject the patient to inordinate risk. The importance of a multidisciplinary approach to these highly complex lesions cannot be over-emphasized, and such an approach yields the safest and most effective outcomes.

References

Endovascular Techniques in the Management of Cerebrovascular Disease


Intracranial venous anatomy

Normal anatomy

Intracranial venous anatomy is functionally complex, with significant variations in size, drainage patterns, and anastomoses. Stenosis and occlusion of intracranial veins may be asymptomatic or may result in significant neurological deficit, diffuse parenchymal edema with coma, and even death. This chapter approaches the intracranial venous system as several inter-related components:

■ the central or deep venous drainage of the hemispheres and posterior fossa;
■ the cortical venous drainage, systems; and
■ the dural sinuses.

The deep venous system of the cerebral hemispheres is concerned with craniopetal venous drainage of deep cerebral white matter and basal ganglia and can be divided at two separate levels:

■ the internal cerebral vein, the basal vein (of Rosenthal), and the vein of Galen, and
■ the transcerebral (medullary) venous system (Figures 9.1 and 9.2).

The internal cerebral vein originates at the interventricular foramen of Monro, where it is formed by the confluence of the septal, anterior caudate, ventricular, choroidal, and terminal (thalamostriate) subependymal veins, although anatomical variation in this region is common. The internal cerebral veins run posteriorly to become united in the rostral quadrigeminal cistern to form the great cerebral vein of Galen.

The basal vein of Rosenthal originates deep within the Sylvian fissure, near the medial part of the anterior temporal lobe, and of can receive drainage from the insula, the cerebral peduncles, and multiple cortical (temporal) tributaries. The basal vein courses posteriorly, curving around the cerebral peduncles to its junction with the vein of Galen or the internal cerebral vein. The basal vein has important anastomoses, with its openings into the deep middle cerebral vein anteriorly, the vein of Galen posteriorly, and the petrosal veins inferiorly.

Paired with the basal vein is the posterior mesencephalic vein. The anterior pontomesencephalic vein runs along the anterior surface of the pons and commonly drains superiorly via the peduncular vein into the posterior mesencephalic vein, which in turn runs around the upper midbrain to drain into the great cerebral vein of Galen.

The vein of Galen is a short, unpaired, midline structure that curves posteriorly beneath the splenium of the corpus callosum. It unites with the inferior sagittal sinus at the tentorial apex to form the straight sinus. Deep venous drainage of the posterior fossa includes the precentral cerebellar vein and the superior vermian vein, which typically drain to the vein of Galen.

Despite a highly variable appearance, several large cortical veins can often be identified individually and include:

■ the superficial middle cerebral vein
■ the superior anastomotic vein of Trolard
■ the inferior anastomotic vein of Labbé.

These last two anastomotic veins are often in a reciprocal relationship such that if one is dominant, the other is usually hypoplastic or absent.

The superficial middle cerebral vein runs anteriorly along the lateral (Sylvian) fissure and receives smaller veins draining the lateral surface of the hemisphere. This large vein curves around the anterior temporal pole and either drains medially into the cavernous sinus or inferiorly into the pterygoid plexus. Anastomotic channels allow the superficial middle cerebral vein to drain in other directions. These include the superior anastomotic vein of Trolard, which opens into the superior sagittal sinus, and the inferior anastomotic vein of Labbé, which opens into the transverse sinus.

Dural venous sinuses are enclosed between the periosteal and meningeal layers of dura, and they lack valves. The superior sagittal sinus lies along the attached border of the falx cerebri and extends from the foramen cecum to the torcular herophili. As it extends posteriorly, the superior sagittal sinus increases in caliber as it collects the superficial cerebral veins draining the cerebral convexities. Arachnoid granulations, contained within venous lacunae, are found protruding into the superior sagittal sinus along its course and may produce normal filling defects on imaging studies. The inferior sagittal sinus lies along the inferior free margin of the falx cerebri and drains the falx, the anterior part of the corpus callosum, and medial aspects of...
the cerebral hemispheres. The inferior sagittal sinus extends posteriorly and is joined by the great cerebral vein of Galen to form the straight sinus.

The transverse sinuses lie along the attached margin of the tentorium cerebelli within a groove on the inner table of the occipital bone. Each transverse sinus courses anterolaterally and, on reaching the base of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, turns inferomedially to form the sigmoid sinus that lies in the sigmoid sulcus of the temporal bone.

The transverse sinuses are commonly asymmetric, with the right transverse sinus being dominant in the majority of cases (Figure 9.3). Other common variations include a unilateral atretic segment and normal intraluminal filling defects resulting from arachnoid granulations, similar to those seen in the superior sagittal sinus. In addition to receiving drainage from the straight and superior sagittal sinuses, the inferior vermian veins (paramedian veins that course posterosuperiorly along the inferior vermis) drain into the transverse sinuses.

The cavernous sinuses are situated on each side of the sphenoid body. Each cavernous sinus is a multi-compartmental extradural space that extends from the superior orbital fissure to the petrous portion of the temporal bone (Figure 9.4). This sinus encloses the cavernous segment of the internal carotid artery and the abducens nerve, whereas the lateral wall of the sinus contains the oculomotor, trochlear, and ophthalmic divisions of
the trigeminal nerves (cranial nerve V) between its dural leaves. The inferior petrosal sinus extends from the posterior aspect of the cavernous sinus, which it drains, and runs posterolaterally in a groove along the petro-occipital fissure, where it terminates, usually, by joining the jugular bulb.

The superior petrosal sinus extends from the posterior aspect of the cavernous sinus to the transverse sinus, running along the attachment of the tentorium cerebelli to the petrous part of the temporal bone. The petrosal vein lies in the cerebellopontine angle cistern and received drainage from the anterior cerebellar veins, in addition to other venous tributaries from the pons and medulla, before emptying into the middle portion of the superior petrosal sinus.

The sphenoparietal sinus lies along the lesser wing of sphenoid and drains usually to the superficial middle cerebral (Sylvian) vein into the cavernous sinus. Less common variations include the sphenoparietal sinus bypassing the cavernous sinus to drain into the pterygoid plexus or the inferior petrosal or transverse sinus (Figure 9.5).

Anatomic variants

Variations in venous anatomy are not uncommon, with some important variations relating to transverse sinus dominance, superior sagittal sinus variants, and great vein of Galen bulbous prominence (Figures 9.6–9.10). As noted above, there is frequently dominance of one of the transverse sinuses, with the right transverse sinus more commonly being larger. It is believed to be responsible for the majority of drainage from the superior sagittal sinus. The left transverse sinus is smaller and it is more often responsible for deep venous drainage from the straight sinus. Hypoplasia and aplasia of the transverse sinus is common, with asymmetry found in 31% of patients. The superior sagittal sinus may be hypoplastic, particularly the anterior third, and nonfusion of the superior sagittal sinus posteriorly has also been reported (Figure 9.6). The accessory straight sinus (the Falcine sinus), which connects the great vein of Galen to the superior sagittal sinus, normally regresses by the fifth gestational month, however it may persist and form a bulbous prominence of the vein of Galen. These variations, along with the common variations in anastomoses and drainage patterns, make predicting the consequences of venous occlusion, particularly in the elective setting such as during surgery, difficult.

Venous anomalies

Calvarial venous malformations are rarely isolated; most are associated with diffuse adjacent venous malformations. Involvement of the cranial vault is particularly common in large venous malformations that are located in the temporal–parietal regions. The thickness of the involved calvarium may be increased calvarially, usually caused by the extension of the venous malformation within the diploic space potentially separating the inner and outer tables. If the calvarium is involved, palpation of the area may reveal a bony defect or irregularity. Involvement of the calvarial diploic space in extensive cervical facial venous malformations is frequently associated with sinus pericranii and intracranial developmental venous anomalies. Sinus pericranii represents a communication between the intracranial and extracranial venous circulations, often associated with an extracranial vascular malformation. The classic presentation of this condition has been described as a round,
Flocculent, non-pulsatile and compressible soft tissue mass, which becomes more prominent with crying or coughing. Sinus pericranii has also been described in patients with craniosynostosis and other skull base anomalies. Sinus pericranii has been classified as being either ‘closed’ or ‘draining’; most sinus pericranii associated with a venous malformations are draining, in which the intracranial circulation can drain to extracranial veins. Diagnosis of sinus pericranii is usually made clinically; imaging is performed to confirm the diagnosis and to investigate the extent of the venous malformation.

**Venous physiology**

It is important to remember the relationship between developmental venous anatomy, cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) production and resorption, and the complex relationship between intracranial venous pressure, brain water, and CSF. Arachnoid granulations are involved in the reabsorption of CSF. Arachnoid granulations bulge into the dural sinuses; the villi open in conditions of raised CSF pressure, and close in conditions of raised venous pressure. They may represent only one route of CSF drainage. Alternative pathways may exist, including
Venous disease: dural sinus thrombosis and occlusion

Risk factors

Any process that triggers a pro-thrombotic state can increase the risk of developing CVST. Risk factors for hypercoagulability can be found in nearly 85% of patients. Head injury or obstetrical delivery can precipitate CVST in patients with genetic risk factors, such as antithrombin deficiency, protein C and protein S deficiency, factor V Leiden mutation, or prothrombin mutation. Pregnancy, particularly the peri-partum and post-partum period, is associated with the development of CVST in about 12 cases per 100,000 deliveries. The use of oral contraceptives requires a special mention. Before their introduction, CVST affected men and women equally. However since that time, there has been a noticeable shift in the incidence to young woman, with recent studies finding women of childbearing age accounting for up to 70–80% of the newly diagnosed cases. In addition, there is good evidence to support the pro-thrombotic side effects of oral contraceptives.

Lumbar punctures and the subsequent drainage of spinal fluid may also trigger CVST. The exact mechanism is unclear, but it is suspected that the lowered intracranial pressure causes downward herniation, which deforms the venous system and triggers thrombosis. Infections also precipitate a pro-thrombotic state, and thus any severe infection systemically increases the risk of CVST. More specifically, intracranial infections such as cerebritis, subdural empyema, and sinus infections have a predilection for triggering thrombosis, owing to proximity of the site of infection to the cerebral veins. Although less common in the era of modern antibiotic treatment, this mechanism is still occasionally seen involving the transverse sinus or middle fossa in children with otitis media or mastoiditis. The overall frequency of sinus infections triggering thrombosis has been on the decline, with recent studies placing it at 6–12%.

Inflammatory disease such as systemic lupus erythematosus, Wegener’s granulomatosis, sarcoidosis, inflammatory bowel disease, and Behçet’s disease all have the potential to increase acute phase reactants and increase the risk of thrombosis. Hematological conditions, such as polycythemia, thrombocytopenia, leukemia, and anemia can be associated with CVST. Acquired prothrombotic conditions include nephrotic syndrome, antiphospholipid syndrome, homocysteinemia, and pregnancy. Dehydration also has the ability to trigger CVST by increasing hematocrit and blood viscosity. Lastly, neoplasms of all types have been linked to an increased risk of thrombosis (Figure 9.12).

Dural sinus thrombosis

Cerebral venous sinus thrombosis (CVST) accounts for 1–2% of strokes in adults, although the exact incidence is unknown. It most often affects young adults and children, with a particular predilection for females since the introduction of oral contraception, particularly third generation contraceptives containing gestodene or desogestrel. The superior, transverse, and sigmoid sinuses are most often involved, and there is a wide variability in the presentation. Efficient and accurate diagnosis is critical to beginning treatment; however, despite aggressive management, mortality rates range from 5 to 30%.
Pathophysiology

Occlusion of cerebral veins impedes arterial outflow and causes venous hypertension, leading to edema and venous infarcts and hemorrhages. Venous hypertension is related to the inability to balance the outflow of venous blood with the inflow of arterial blood. This imbalance can trigger edema and intracranial hypertension. The edema associated with CVST can be either cytotoxic or vasogenic. Cytotoxic edema is irreversible and is caused by ischemia related to poor oxygen delivery from the arterial side. Vasogenic edema is caused by a reversible disruption in the blood-brain barrier, with extravasation of blood plasma into the interstitial space. Communicating hydrocephalus and intracranial hypertension can also develop from the inability to maintain the normal CSF absorption in the setting of dural sinus thrombosis.

Venous hypertension can decrease the normal transit of blood through the intracranial circulation; if impaired significantly, this
Venous disease: dural sinus thrombosis and occlusion

Diagnosis

Owing to the wide-ranging and often vague symptoms associated with CVST, diagnosis can be difficult and time-consuming. A detailed history to identify risk factors is crucial. Patients who present with unusual headaches with or without neurological manifestations, particularly when associated with risk factors, warrant detailed investigation. Young people without vascular risk factors but with stroke-like symptoms and patients, with intracranial hypertension should also have CVST considered in the differential diagnosis. Patients with unusual hemorrhages both in appearance and location on CT imaging may have an associated cerebral venous thrombosis.

Imaging is crucial to the diagnosis of CVST. Non-contrasted CT imaging may or may not reveal hyperdensity of the occluded vein. The classic description is the ‘cord sign’ on non-contrasted imaging; however, beam-hardening artifact from the temporal bone may obscure the transverse and sigmoid sinuses. Contrasted CT imaging may or may not reveal the ‘empty delta’ sign, which results from a void of contrast as a result of the presence of a thrombus surrounded by the enhancing dura of the dural sinus. CT venography will also show an absence in opacification of the sinus. Other non-specific imaging characteristics include generalized or focal brain edema, hypodensity secondary to venous infarction, hemorrhage (intracerebral and/or subarachnoid), and dural enhancement secondary to venous congestion. The use of multi-row detector CT angiography has increased the sensitivity and specificity of identifying CVST in one recent study to 100%.

MRI is currently the diagnostic study of choice in children because of its capacity to visualize flow, thrombus, infarction, and any underlying abnormality without ionizing radiation. MRI will reveal a hyperdensity of T1- and T2-weighted scans at the location of the thrombus. However, depending on the age of the clot, the thrombus may be isointense on T1-weighted imaging during the first few days after its formation or even after 1 month. Additionally, MRI has the advantage of extremely high sensitivity to the parenchymal changes seen in CVST. Cortical and subcortical high-signal intensity lesions on fluid attenuation inversion-recovery sequences and T2-weighted imaging may be highly suggestive of CVST when the lesions do not correspond to sinus thrombosis. Patients who have intracranial hypertension alone may present only with headaches and papillema on fundoscopic examination.

Clinical manifestations

Severe headache is the most common symptom associated with CVST, affecting almost 90% of the patients. It is often slow in onset, increasing over days; however, abrupt onset has been noted. Patients may also present with a seizure or stroke-like symptoms, such as hemiparesis or aphasia. Seizures are focal in 50% of the cases. Deep sinus thrombosis of the straight sinus can cause thalamic disturbances such as mutism, amnesia, and delirium. Patients may present in or progress to a moribund state if intracranial pressures are high. Focal disturbances such as ocular paresis, proptosis, and chemosis have been described with cavernous sinus thrombosis.
Conventional catheter angiography remains the gold standard for diagnosing cerebrovascular lesions, however, it is rarely needed to diagnose CVST with current MR and CT capabilities. Absence in opacification and delayed transit time are both seen. However, absent or hypoplastic transverse sinus may be a normal variant and indistinguishable from transverse sinus thrombosis. Angiography is reserved for those patients whose diagnosis is in doubt after non-invasive imaging, or in those who warrant endovascular intervention.

Treatment

Since the presenting symptoms of CVST can range from a mild headache to a comatose state with herniation or intracerebral hemorrhage, the first intervention should be to stabilize the patient. This may require giving hydration and analgesics, treating increased intracranial pressure, or performing a decompressive craniectomy. Once the patient has been stabilized, investigating the underlying cause of the CVST (e.g. infection, oral contraceptive medications) should be addressed and treatment initiated. Presentations with an altered level of consciousness usually need urgent endovascular intervention.
is possible. 82  Alteplase (rT-PA) has pharmacologic advantages
straight sinus has also been found successful when no other access
into an occluded dural sinus. 74       – 78  With improved catheter
strating the feasibility of direct infusion of thrombolytic agents
therapy should be considered. There are several reports demon-
paths and heterogeneous in the population studies. 24  ,  72  ,  73
However, none of these studies found new or increased size
of intracerebral hemmorhages in the setting of heparin. Thus, in
the setting of an acute ill patient with sinus thrombosis and
hemorrhage, heparin is still generally considered a first-line agent,
even in the presence of hemorrhage. 74 No studies to date have
compared fractionated heparin with unfractionated heparin in
this patient population.

Warfarin provides a good alternative to heparin for non-
hospitalized patients, and is often instituted concomitantly in
those who are hospitalized. The optimal length of anticoagula-
tion is unknown, and the risk of thrombotic recurrence is
about 2%  34  It is not unreasonable to base the length of treat-
ment by following the patients with MRI until the thrombus
resolves or stabilizes.

There have been no studies investigating the role of aspirin or
clopidogrel for the treatment of cerebral sinus thrombosis. In
patients who cannot tolerate warfarin, one can theorize that these
medications may be an alternative to preventing further platelet
aggregation; however, the true benefit is unknown.

Patients with rapidly progressive thrombosis and diffuse brain
swelling (with or without multiple hemorrhage) should be con-
sidered for endovascular therapy. If, after institution of heparin
therapy there is clinical worsening, direct-infusion thrombolytic
therapy should be considered. There are several reports demon-
strating the feasibility of direct infusion of thrombolytic agents
into an occluded dural sinus. 74  – 78  With improved catheter
technology, access to the intracranial cerebral circulation (even
the deep venous system) can be achieved via the common femoral
vein (Figure 9.15). 74  – 76  Although direct access via a burr hole of the
straight sinus has also been found successful when no other access
is possible. 74  Alteplase (rT-PA) has pharmacologic advantages
over urokinase, including a short half-life 28  and the lowest level of
fibrinogen degradation products, 44  which may reduce the risk of
hemorrhagic complications.

Despite the use of thrombolytic therapy in adults, there is
conflicting literature in expanding to the application of these
results to children. There are several case reports highlighting
successful thrombolytic therapy in neonates and children. 75  ,  85       – 89
One study in a small number of patients compared throm-
bolytic therapy with the use of heparin. 88 In this study neuro-
logic function at discharge was found to be better in the
thrombolytic group. Major hemorrhagic complications have
also been reported. 78 A consecutive cohort of seven children
with symptomatic venous thrombosis reported successful lysis
in only one child, as well as major complications. 88 Of note, a
large population of children with deep venous thrombosis
reported a failure of thrombolytic therapy to revascularize
the sinuses in a significant percentage of the patients, 87
emphasizing the difference in the coagulation system of children and
adults. 87

Various mechanical revascularization techniques have been
used in the dural sinuses: clot disruption using guidewires,
rheolytic thrombectomy catheters, 91 balloon thrombectomy
with thrombolysis, transluminal balloon angioplasty with or
without stenting, and surgical thrombectomy. There are no
trials comparing endovascular treatment of CVST with heparin
(Figure 9.16). 92

Dural sinus stenoses and
non-thrombotic occlusion

Dural sinus stenosis may occur as a result of high-flow angio-
pathy, such as that seen with arterial–venous malformations
and fistulae. Alternatively, venous stenosis and, ultimately, occlu-
sion can be caused by extravenous compression secondary to
primary and metastatic tumors (in the parenchyma, dura, or
cranial vault), epidural hematoma, infection, or abscess. The
clinical presentation of dural sinus stenosis and occlusion
may be asymptomatic and found during diagnostic work-up
for another primary disease process. Alternatively, symptomatic
stenosis and extravenous occlusion may present with a gradual
onset of non-specific symptoms such as headache. However, in
however, their long term efficacy has not been systematically studied or reported.\textsuperscript{94,95}

**Conclusion**

Cerebral venous sinus thrombosis, although rare, has a varying symptomatic presentation from minor headaches to a moribund state requiring emergency intervention. Stable patients may be treated with anticoagulation and monitored with serial imaging.
However, patients with a declining neurological status may benefit from endovascular intervention in addition to medical management. In some cases, surgical decompression is warranted because of increased intracranial pressure.

References


Introduction

The decision-making process for the treatment of patients with cerebrovascular disease can be thought of as an algorithm. As with any complex decision-making process, two approaches can be used. One strategy is to start by determining what the desired end result is for the patient. Then, a clinician may think backwards from the end result through each of the steps that are required to achieve the final goal, eventually arriving at the initial presenting clinical scenario. In the other approach, the physician may start by thinking through the larger and more general issues first and then move through the smaller and more technical issues, finally arriving at a plan. My personal strategy is the latter, where I begin by asking several broad questions that narrow down the options tremendously in a rapid fashion, allowing me to crystallize my thoughts on the treatment paradigm to be offered to the patient.

A typical example occurs in the outpatient clinic when trainees present their patients with aneurysms to me, and invariably one of their questions is ‘should we clip or coil?’ Equally invariably, I must always first ask ‘should we treat at all?’ Indeed, this is the central and most important question that needs to be answered first. The question ‘should we treat?’ is often the most difficult and the most personal decision a clinician must ask. This statement distills down to an equation that balances benefit of treatment against risk of treatment. If the perceived benefit of treatment is greater than the risk it poses to the patient (i.e. the natural history), generally speaking, treatment with one modality or another should proceed.

When a physician asks that question, he or she needs to have a clear endpoint in mind. For the patient with the asymptomatic aneurysm or arterial–venous information (AVM), I can accept nothing less as an outcome than returning the patient back to his or her previous living arrangement and vocation without a neurological deficit. If the patient has a ruptured aneurysm or AVM, my goal is to create no additional neurological injury with the proposed treatment.

Physicians and patients are truly fortunate in the early part of the 21st century to have more than one treatment technique. Imagine, if you will, practicing neurosurgery in the 1970s, when every hemorrhagic cerebrovascular problem encountered could only be addressed by microsurgery. Although this readily reduces the decision-making to a binary process (surgery or no surgery,) more recent experience has suggested that microsurgery is not always the best option for the patient. Today, we have at our disposal three broad categories of treatment for identified causes of hemorrhagic stroke: surgery, endovascular embolization, and stereotactic radiosurgery. For contemporary treatment of ischemic stroke there is now a broader range of medical therapy as well as surgery and endovascular techniques.

Aneurysms

Long regarded as the gold standard, microsurgery has been challenged by endovascular techniques such that they have become, if not the dominant treatment strategy for the management of cerebral aneurysms, at least a very strong rival. Indeed, in Europe the vast majority of cerebral aneurysms, both ruptured and unruptured, are treated by endovascular coiling. Although the debate over which technique is superior will not end yet, microsurgeons would be remiss if they did not at least think about an endovascular treatment opinion or option.

The most compelling data for the equivalence, if not superiority of, endovascular coiling techniques in the management of cerebral aneurysms come from the International Subarachnoid Aneurysm Trial (ISAT). This large, randomized, multi-center, international trial explored a policy of endovascular treatment compared with microsurgical clipping for the management of ruptured intracranial aneurysms. The conclusion of this study was that patients with ruptured aneurysms whose lesions were amenable to treatment by either technique had a significantly better chance of disability-free survival at 1 year if treated by an endovascular strategy. This study provided, for the first time, nearly overwhelming evidence for the superiority of endovascular techniques. The conclusion of this study was that patients with ruptured aneurysms whose lesions were amenable to treatment by either technique had a significantly better chance of disability-free survival at 1 year if treated by an endovascular strategy. This study provided, for the first time, nearly overwhelming evidence for the superiority of endovascular techniques. Several points of contention were immediately noted by neurosurgeons worldwide (the overwhelming preponderance of small anterior circulation aneurysms in the trials, the durability of coiling techniques, and the paucity of posterior circulation aneurysms randomized). More candidly, however, the low number of posterior circulation aneurysms randomized and the fact that most clinicians recognize that these lesions are generally treated with much greater ease and better outcomes via the endovascular route. Such aneurysms were not randomized and were almost universally treated by coiling. With regard to the large number of small aneurysms randomized, these aneurysms are precisely the lesions amenable to surgical treatment.
Durability issues have been addressed by the Cerebral Aneurysm Rerupture After Treatment (CARAT) study, which was an ambidirectional cohort study of patients with ruptured intracranial aneurysms treated with coil embolization at nine high-volume US centers in the late 1990s. In this study of over 1000 patients, a slightly higher rate of re-rupture was noted in patients treated with endovascular occlusion; however, this difference did not persist after adjustment for potential confounding variables. Mean time to re-rupture was 3 days and almost no patient re-ruptured after 1 year.

This brings me to the first question that I ask myself during my therapeutic decision-making process: Is the aneurysm ruptured or unruptured? Clearly, based on the above discussion, if the aneurysm has ruptured, strong consideration must be given to treating the aneurysm by endovascular techniques. If the aneurysm is unruptured, ISAT does not give guidance on what technique should be used and other factors in the equation must be factored into the decision.

**Location**

Location of the aneurysm plays a role in the decision-making process regardless of the treatment technique being contemplated. From the microsurgical viewpoint, location has different implications from those of the endovascular viewpoint. To a surgeon, location dictates the approach, and some surgical approaches are technically easier and are performed more frequently than others. For example, the surgical exposure to mid-basilar trunk aneurysm is performed infrequently and carries with it high morbidity and technical demands. Conversely, the standard pterional approach to an anterior circulation aneurysm is performed routinely and with very low morbidity. However, that does not mean that all anterior circulation aneurysms are best approached microsurgically. Some common locations of anterior circulation aneurysms are extremely difficult for the neurosurgeon to approach (e.g. a superior hypophyseal aneurysm arising from the supraclinoid carotid.) Furthermore, a superiorly pointing anterior communicating artery aneurysm can be surgically approached, but its intimate association with the central perforating arteries places the patient at increased risk of neurological morbidity.

From an endovascular standpoint, location does not reflect the approach (since it is nearly always the same – trans femoral); rather, location may have implications in regards to the morphology of the aneurysm. Considering location alone, an endovascular strategy for tackling a mid-basilar trunk aneurysm would be preferable over a microsurgical approach. Conversely, middle cerebral artery (MCA) aneurysms are often dysplastic by their nature, and often extending into the MCA bifurcation itself. The dysplastic component often portends a wide neck, and the branching pattern of the MCA can make obtaining an angiographic working angle difficult. Thus MCA bifurcation aneurysms are generally more suitably treated with microsurgical clipping where open exposure allows direct visualization and reconstruction of the parent vessel.

However, I do not believe that a surgically accessible location, such as the posterior communicating segment of the internal carotid artery (ICA) should cause a surgeon to make a blind recommendation for clipping. Rather, other factors such as the morphology of the aneurysm, the presence of calcification in the dome, the size, and patient co-morbidities should carry more weight.

**Age**

The age of the patient should play a role in the decision-making process. Treatment morbidity and mortality is clearly higher in patients over the age of 50 years with unruptured aneurysms larger than 12 mm treated by microsurgical techniques than those treated by endovascular techniques. For those patients over the age of 70 years with unruptured aneurysms, a poor outcome is seen 35% of the time regardless of the size of the aneurysm, poor outcome being defined at 1 year as death, a Rankin score of 3–5, or impaired cognitive status. However, a similar impact of age on outcome was not observed in the ISAT trial, leaving unclear the answer to the question of the impact of age on treatment technique for patients harboring ruptured aneurysms. Most likely the influence of the neurological devastation incurred by the patient secondary to the rupture of the aneurysm is at least as powerful as the influence of age and the treatment technique.

Frequently, neurosurgeons are concerned that endovascular coiling may not provide a young patient with durable aneurysm occlusion for the remainder of his or her life. Personally, I have not found this to be a concern with the exception of aneurysms that occur at the ICA terminus. In my opinion, aneurysms at this location have a higher rate of re-canalization than aneurysms at other locations. Therefore, I generally recommend microsurgical clipping for patients under the age of 60 with aneurysms at the ICA terminus. In other locations I have not found this to be of concern, and I would refer the reader to the durability data supplied by the CARAT study of ruptured aneurysms. Empirically, the durability of endovascular clipping of unruptured aneurysms is superior to that of the ruptured aneurysms followed in the CARAT study; therefore, durability should not be of concern in unruptured aneurysms.

**Morphology**

During the infancy of endovascular devices and techniques, a relative contraindication to coil embolization was wide-necked aneurysm morphology. Because retention of the coils in the aneurysm sac depends upon a friction fit between the loops of the coil and the wall of the aneurysm, a wide-necked aneurysm posed substantial technical challenges to the endovascular neurosurgeon. Indeed, a dome-to-neck ratio of less than 2 was thought to be the limit of the technique. However, with technological advances in both device and technique, nearly all aneurysm morphologies and dome-to-neck ratios are treatable with coil embolization (Figure 10.1).

Stent-assisted and balloon-assisted techniques have now been developed that allow for embolization of nearly all cerebral aneurysms. These devices have been designed and manufactured to clinician specifications to allow for low-risk treatment of wide-necked side-wall and terminus aneurysms. The first of these technologies and techniques, balloon-assisted coiling (or balloon remodeling technique), was originally designed for the treatment of wide-necked side-wall aneurysms such as in the dorsal carotid...
Thrombus and calcification

From a microsurgical standpoint the presence of thrombus in the dome and of calcium in the aneurysm wall adds to the technical difficulty of the procedure. During aneurysm manipulation and microsurgical clipping, thrombus inside the dome can embolize to the distal circulation, leading to infarction. Similarly, presence of calcium in the aneurysm wall can make clipping difficult and accurate reconstruction of the parent vessel impossible. From an endovascular standpoint, calcification in the aneurysm wall is of no importance and adds nothing to the technical difficulty of the procedure, in fact this ‘armor coating’ may reduce the risk of iatrogenic hemorrhage. The presence of thrombus, however, is an entirely different matter.

Prior to the introduction of intracranial stents for the treatment, a partially thrombosed aneurysm dome had been a relative contraindication to endovascular management. Although the initial angiographic result can be perfect, over time there may be substantial aneurysm recanalization due to a migration of coils into the thrombus mass, leading to a major recanalization of the aneurysm. With the addition of stents, aneurysms appear to re-canalize less frequently. Although the presence of thrombus still represents a relatively mild contraindication to coil therapy, large or giant partially thrombosed aneurysms can be managed with coiling provided the treatment is assisted with a stent in the parent vessel. At present, this is the preferred method of handling partially thrombosed giant aneurysms because it carries with it a lower risk of morbidity for the patient.

Co-morbidities

Generally speaking there is minimal debate in the neurological community that patients with significant medical co-morbidities are better served by endovascular management – shorter procedure times, absence of brain retraction, minimal blood loss, and minimal cranial invasion intuitively should be less stressful on a compromised organism. What is debatable is what constitutes significant medical co-morbidity.

Figure 10.1

(a) Left inferior oblique digital subtraction angiogram showing a wide-necked anterior communicating artery aneurysm in a 74-year-old woman with a strong family history of subarachnoid hemorrhage and death. Given her age, we favored endovascular management of this lesion. This view shows two compliant balloons, one in each A branch, ready to be inflated for parent vessel protection. Prior to the development of compliant balloon technology and the confidence and experience with balloon remodeling technique it is likely this aneurysm would have been deemed ‘un-coilable’. (b) Left inferior oblique radiograph showing a micro-catheter in the dome of the aneurysm, poised to begin coiling of the aneurysm, and the two compliant balloons in their inflated configuration offering parent vessel protection. (c) Left inferior oblique unsubtracted angiogram showing the final configuration of the coils and end result of the balloon-assisted coiling procedure.
Unlike patients with cervical carotid atherosclerotic disease, in whom multiple trials have delineated what constitutes high medical risk for carotid endarterectomy, no such scientific data are available for the operative management of cerebral aneurysms. Co-morbid conditions can roughly be defined as advanced age, recent myocardial infarction (< 6 weeks), chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and other pulmonary disorders, disorders of coagulation, and chronic renal insufficiency. Some authorities feel that subarachnoid hemorrhage itself is a medical co-morbidity and the recommendation should lean toward endovascular therapy in this setting. Clearly those patients suffering acute cardiomyopathy secondary to subarachnoid hemorrhage are better served by endovascular therapy. The presence of one of these conditions may suggest that one technique may be preferred to another for a given patient. Chronic renal insufficiency may lead to a recommendation of microsurgery in order to avoid the renal toxicity of contrast agents. The most rational strategy for approaching the patient with medical co-morbidities may be to seek the opinion of an anesthesiologist familiar with both techniques regarding the relative risk that an individual patient will be exposed to from an anesthetic standpoint.

**Adjunctive devices**

Adjunctive devices such as highly flexible stents and highly compliant balloons have greatly expanded the spectrum of aneurysms amenable to endovascular techniques. Unfortunately, their use adds an extra dimension to the complexity of the treatment. This is clearly in violation of the KISS principle (‘keep it simple, stupid’) and consequently the risk of a complication is increased and must be factored into the decision algorithm. Nevertheless both devices enable an interventionalist greater flexibility in treatment strategies for a given patient.

Balloon-assisted embolization techniques require the use of intermittent balloon inflations to protect the parent vessel from coil prolapse and compromise. This can lead to ischemic complications from both thromboembolic and hemodynamic etiologies. Although it is not accurately known how long these balloons can be inflated during aneurysm treatment, some knowledge can be gleaned from the experience of vascular neurosurgeons and their utilization of temporary clipping for proximal control. It can be argued that balloon inflations may be tolerated longer in the endovascular laboratory than in the operating room, because collateral vessels in the brain may be partially compromised by the brain retraction. Alternatively, thromboembolic complications can occur, especially if the patient is not heparinized during the procedure.

As opposed to stent-supported coiling, balloon-assisted techniques require an operator to perform two relatively complex tasks simultaneously: accurate inflation of the balloon and coil insertion into the aneurysm. These maneuvers require a high degree of concentration, and given the only minor differences in radio-opacity of the catheters, some confusion can arise as to when the coil has reached the detachment point. This combination of events raises the risk of morbidity ever so slightly during this procedure.

Stent-supported coiling, on the other hand, does not require simultaneous performance of complex tasks. The stent can be introduced initially at the start of the procedure or it can be placed at the end of the procedure after the coils have been placed to protect the parent vessel. Since these tasks are done serially and not in parallel, in my opinion this technique may carry a slightly lower risk of peri-procedural morbidity. However, the use of an intracranial stent is essentially limited to patients harboring unruptured aneurysms and requires the use of antiplatelet agents, which increases the risk of morbidity should the aneurysm or other vessel be perforated. Regardless of which technique is employed, the interventionalist needs to factor in this slightly higher risk of morbidity in the decision-making process.

**Arterial–venous malformations**

In contrast to cerebral aneurysms, the decision to treat AVMs is more complex, and for the most part falls under the realm of the art of medicine. Even when the AVM has ruptured, the decision to move forward with surgical or endovascular therapy is not always clear. Compared with cerebral aneurysm treatment, morbidity from a surgical standpoint is often substantially higher. In addition, stereotactic radiosurgery is another treatment modality that needs to be considered.

The factors to consider in the decision-making process include age and expectation of the patient, the location of the lesion, the presence or absence of medical co-morbidities, the symptomatic or asymptomatic nature of the lesion, the modality of treatment being considered, and angiographic determinants of hemorrhage risk such as central venous drainage, the presence of nidal aneurysms, or a peri-ventricular location. Before a decision can be made to recommend active treatment over conservative management and one treatment modality over another, a full evaluation of the patient must take place. This includes an accurate seizure history, a description and a classification of headache, and a history of possible cognitive or
The decision-making process: treatment planning for cerebrovascular disease

175

neurological decline. Furthermore, the age of the patient, social history, employment history, and patient expectation must be factored into the decision-making process. If the clinician is entertaining the thought of offering the patient treatment, a full imaging evaluation must follow, which includes MRI scanning (I find T2-weighted sequences the most helpful) and high-quality, high-resolution, fast filming (4 frames per second) four vessel cerebral angiography. In my opinion, treatment recommendations cannot be made without both angiography and MRI.

A clear understanding of the natural history of cerebral AVMs is required when counseling patients. Unfortunately, there is a shortage of scientific data available to guide us on the hemorrhage risk of the asymptomatic AVM. Most of the data that are available are based on symptomatic AVMs, and these data are often subjected to institutional referral bias. There also is a strong correlation between the age of the patient and the hemorrhage risk. Most hemorrhages occur in the 20–40-year age group. Consequently, the age of the patient is very important when counseling on their risk of hemorrhage.

In addition, when quoting to patients the microsurgical risks of post-operative neurological deficits, some guidance can gleaned from the literature (Tables 10.1, 10.2).10–12 Keep in mind, though, that your surgical morbidity and mortality may not be as good as Spetzler and Martin’s. When entertaining the thought of microsurgical treatment of a cerebral AVM, the surgeon must be brutally honest about his or her surgical skill set as to what is the expected neurological havoc that will be brought to the patient during the operation.

To treat or not to treat

AVMs are formidable lesions to tackle both from a microsurgical and an endovascular technical standpoint. Conversely, stereotactic radiosurgery from an operator standpoint is relatively easy. Each of these treatment modalities carries with it different and distinct morbidity. Morbidity associated with microsurgical and endovascular treatment of an AVM may be as high as 30–50% depending on the size and complexity of the lesion. The same lesion may have a morbidity associated with radiosurgery in the low single digits. Therefore, the modality of treatment to be offered plays a vital role in deciding on whether or not to treat the patient. For instance, a 2.5 cm lesion located in the thalamus may carry an exceptionally high surgical morbidity; however, the risk of radiosurgery is exceedingly low and will probably afford the patient the same likelihood of cure. So, if such a patient had an asymptomatic thalamic AVM and the only modality available was microsurgery, the decision would likely be not to treat; however, if radiosurgery is available the decision would be likely to treat.

Age

As mentioned above, patients who present with hemorrhages tend to be in the 20–40-year age group. Consequently when evaluating patients much younger or older than this, caution must be exercised as to how strongly one recommends treatment. Moreover, patients less than 18 years of age tend to be prone to AVM recurrences or the development of new AVMs after their initial treatment.11

Generally speaking, I am reluctant to recommend active treatment of an asymptomatic AVM for a child during his or her high school years for several reasons. First, the risk of hemorrhage in this age group is very low. Second, if treatment is undertaken there’s a strong likelihood that the AVM will either recur or re-grow in the same location, necessitating further treatment. Third, if the child develops neurological and cognitive deficits in response to the treatment and this leads to loss of IQ and stigmatization, this will make it very difficult for the child to receive a high school diploma, and his or her social development will be greatly retarded. I much prefer to wait for the child to graduate from high school so that he or she is fully socially developed and has received a high school diploma before exposing the child to the risk of treatment. I feel this is safe as the risk of hemorrhage during adolescence is quite low.

Similarly, if the patient is aged over 45 years, the risks of microsurgery are increased. In my experience, even with the performance of pre-operative embolization, the chance of post-operative hemorrhage secondary to normal perfusion pressure breakthrough is quite high. This needs to be factored into the

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 10.1 Determination of arterial–venous malformation grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Graded feature</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 3 cm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3–6 cm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 6 cm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elocuence of adjacent brain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-eloquent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eloquent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Venous drainage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superficial only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deep</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 10.2 Correlation of grade of arterial–venous malformation with surgical morbidity and mortality</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Grade</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
treatment decision-making process. Frequently, patients in this age group are asymptomatic or minimally symptomatic and therefore are at low risk of hemorrhage. I feel that very young patients and older patients need a low-risk treatment alternative given their favorable natural history. Usually this treatment option includes radiosurgery because of its low treatment morbidity.

Role of embolization

Using a groin puncture, floating a microcatheter to an AVM nidus, and injecting an embolic agent resulting in a cure is every interventionalist’s dream, and it is the holy grail of endovascular therapy. Although there is some reported success in curing an AVM with embolization alone, by no means can this be guaranteed a priori. Personal experience suggests that even angiographic obliteration following embolization does not necessarily mean that the patient is cured. It is possible that the radio-opacity of the embolic agent cast does not allow for adequate visualization of residual nidus, which can leave the patient susceptible to hemorrhage. Moreover, embolization therapy is not a benign procedure and carries with it morbidity as high as 30% per embolization session.

Because of the low rate of cure following embolization and the risk of leaving unprotected nidus, I view embolization as a pre-surgical adjunct or a palliative treatment for those patients with so-called Spetzler–Martin grade VI (‘surgically incurable’) AVMs who are having progressive neurological decline secondary to steal phenomenon. In addition, pre-radiosurgical embolization has been associated with a decreased rate of cure. Embolization prior to radiosurgery makes visualization of the nidus during treatment planning difficult. It is often thought that embolization can shrink the size of a large AVM down to one that is more conducive to radiosurgery. In reality, it is difficult to actually reduce the volume of the nidus in a manner that will facilitate radiosurgical planning; therefore, generally speaking, I do not routinely offer patients embolization prior to radiosurgical treatment.

Location

No other factor portends the risk of post-operative (surgical) neurological morbidity than the location of the lesion. Whether the lesion is in so-called eloquent brain or in a deep location, surgical approaches to these regions and potential iatrogenic injury to the surrounding area frequently makes surgical resection hazardous. High surgical risk locations can be defined as eloquent regions as outlined by Spetzler and Martin, who described the sensorimotor, language, and visual cortex, the hypothalamus and thalamus, the internal capsule, the brainstem, the cerebellar peduncles, and the deep cerebellar nuclei as being eloquent regions.

When treating AVMs with radiosurgery in and near these locations, the fact that these territories are thought to be eloquent is less important. Generally speaking, a radiation dose will be chosen that is very unlikely to lead to tissue destruction of the adjacent regions, and therefore the risk is lower. For this reason, lesions in eloquent locations are, in my opinion, are generally best treated by radiosurgery.

Imaging and angiographic determinants

As mentioned above, full evaluation with MRI and catheter angiography is required prior to making definitive treatment recommendations to the patient. These imaging studies should be reviewed to ascertain the location and size of the lesion, its relationship to eloquent structures, the surgical corridors available, the presence of aneurysms both on the feeding pedicles and in the AVM nidus, and the adequacy of venous outflow. The size of the lesion can have direct impact on the utility of radiosurgery. Generally speaking, lesions larger than 3–3.5 cm are not amenable to radiosurgical treatment. Lesions smaller than this are readily treatable by radiosurgery with a cure rate approaching 80%.

Recently we, and other centers, have begun treating AVMs larger that 3–3.5 cm with radiosurgery. This can be accomplished by treating a half or a portion of the AVM at one session, then having the patient return in the future for a second radiosurgical session that treats the balance of the AVM. Chance of cure in what would be an otherwise untreatable lesion has been reported to be as high as 50%. In addition, AVM symptoms such as seizures can often be stabilized with this technique.

Timing of treatment

For patients with asymptomatic or unruptured AVMs, timing of treatment can proceed at the mutual convenience of the physician and the patient. For patients with AVMs who present with recent hemorrhage, timing of treatment and modality can be somewhat more complicated.

Although there has been a trend among some practitioners to move towards early surgical and endovascular treatment of ruptured AVMs, my personal preference is to wait 4–8 weeks after the ictus before proceeding with surgical resection or radiosurgery. During this interval, the hematoma will resorb, reactive cerebral edema can resolve, and the hematoma cavity has a chance to mature. Operating on a ruptured AVM prior to resolution of the hematoma and edema can be technically challenging and may increase operative morbidity through increased brain swelling, errors in differentiating nidus from ‘angry’ adjacent brain, and difficulty with retraction. Even proceeding with radiosurgery can be problematic because the edema and hematoma may make accurate targeting of the lesion difficult. Since there is often a 1–2-year latent period before resolution of the AVM, a 4–8 week delay in initiating radiosurgical treatment will have no deleterious effects in terms of subsequent hemorrhage risk.

There are some circumstances when urgent therapy is warranted in the acute setting. After presentation with intracerebral hemorrhage, if an AVM is suspected the patient should undergo diagnostic angiography. If this demonstrates an AVM, the images should be searched for the presence of angiographic features that may increase the patient’s risk of early re-bleeding. Angiographic determinants of risk of subsequent hemorrhage, such as intranidal aneurysms, peri-ventricular location, and a venous stenosis, put the patient at higher risk of re-bleeding. In this setting, I favor early elective embolization to decrease the shunt and reduce the risk of subsequent re-bleeding. Nidal aneurysms should be assumed to be the source of the hemorrhage and these should be obliterated. In addition, if the patient
needs urgent craniotomy for hematoma evacuation to alleviate elevated intracranial pressure and mass effect, pre-operative embolization may add a margin of safety and reduce intra-operative blood loss. Of course, pre-surgical embolization should be sought only if the patient is neurologically stable and can tolerate the procedure prior to craniotomy.

Atherosclerotic stenoses

Surgery of atherosclerotic cerebrovascular disease, particularly at the carotid bifurcations, is one of the commonest surgical procedures performed. The body of medical literature devoted to the subject since the time of Fisher’s first account is not only staggering in volume, but also impressive in its evolutionary sophistication. Publication of the North American Symptomatic Endarterectomy Study and the Asymptomatic Carotid Artery Surgery trial extended the concepts of Kaplan–Meier survival curves and odds ratios beyond the realm of public health and biostatistics and into the greater community of surgeons and neurologists. The demonstration of benefit in the reduction of long-term (> 30 days) stroke morbidity and mortality is unique to surgery; this type of data for stenting must await completion of the Carotid Revascularization Endarterectomy versus Stent Trial (CREST). In North America, much credit also goes to the American Heart Association for the inclusion of cerebrovascular disease in its domain, aiding in the recognition and management of risk factors.

Symptomatic versus asymptomatic

Beyond age and co-morbidities that may have an impact on long term survival, there are two key data points in clinical decision making for ischemic disease:

- Is the stenosis symptomatic?
- How severe is the stenosis?

Symptoms in the vascular distribution of a stenosis may be clinically crystalline or obtuse. Certainly, the aid of a neurological expert is invaluable in establishing causation. In the unusual case in which uncertainty persists (especially for cortical symptoms), diffusion-weighting imaging may be a highly sensitive adjunct in establishing parenchymal injury even when symptoms are transient. Alternatively, the case for revascularization of asymptomatic lesions rests almost exclusively with the severity of the stenosis in the context of the individual patient’s overall health and the risk of intervention.

Severity of Disease

While measured in a specific fashion, severity of stenosis can be established a number of ways: CT, MRI, duplex ultrasound, or conventional angiography. CT and MRI have the added benefit of establishing the integrity of the brain parenchyma and the presence of hemorrhage and of providing a potentially qualitative assessment of cerebral perfusion. Duplex ultrasound, while inexpensive, is an indirect measure of stenosis severity, moreover, it is highly operator-dependent and does not offer brain imaging, and is thus less desirable in symptomatic patients.

Timing of treatment

Also important is the relationship of symptom onset and severity to the risk of stroke, and hence the benefit of earlier revascularization. The risk of stroke is greatest in the initial weeks and months after the first symptoms. Patients with contralateral occlusion or poor collateral flow are also at additional risk. The risk of stroke is also noted to be greater in those with hemispheric symptoms than in those presenting with retinal ischemia.

The risk and the reward for carotid endarterectomy are well established, while endovascular treatment of carotid disease is indicated and approved for a relative minority of patients (Table 10.3). Alternatively the EC–IC bypass trial failed to demonstrate benefit of surgery for intracranial occlusive disease, while preliminary experience with specifically designed stent systems has demonstrated early technical success as well as symptomatic relief in selected patients with intracranial stenoses. Demographic and angiographic considerations may play a role in selecting those patients least likely to suffer re-stenosis.

Acute ischemic stroke

Clinical decision-making in cases of acute stroke is often difficult, owing to the urgency presented by time constraints: high stakes ‘beat the clock’. Under such circumstances, efficiency of communication is of paramount importance: the time of onset, the age of the patient and his or her baseline functional status, the blood pressure, the heart rate and rhythm, National Institutes of
Health Stroke Scale (NIHSS), medications and anticoagulation status, serum glucose level, imaging results (if available), and contact information for informed consent must be noted immediately (Table 10.4). While obtaining this information, there is a constant mental calibration of the availability of intravenous thrombolitics and their odds of success, the shortest route to an angiography suite, the availability of nurses and technologists, and the time to prepare and access the cerebral circulation via endovascular means. There can be no wasted motion, the corollary of which is that such a high level of coordinated care requires significant pre-planning and education.

In virtually every instance, treatment should be initiated at the earliest possible moment and without delay, (e.g., intravenous thrombolytic therapy if within the 3-hour window from symptom onset). This is the inherent appeal of the so-called ‘bridging protocols’, in which intravenous lytic therapy is begun at the earliest possible moment, even while mobilizing additional resources for intra-arterial treatment.27

Nevertheless, with larger vessel occlusions we know that it is unlikely that intravenous treatment alone will be sufficient. In such cases, particularly those transferred from other facilities, it is always tempting to obtain additional imaging prior to proceeding, potentially at the risk of additional delays. This is particularly true at off-hours when personnel must be summoned from home. Clearly older patients temporarily removed from the 3-hour window and with even subtle changes on CT will not do well. Conversely, younger patients seen and treated early with an essentially normal presenting CT scan should be given every benefit of the doubt; the team should be dispatched as soon as possible, with little or no time spent admiring additional imaging studies. It is to be hoped that with the ever-expanding use of faster and safer mechanical thrombectomy devices, the pool of eligible patients for these treatments will expand as well.28

Finally, it is easy to succumb to the temptation of treating patients emergently referred for acute stroke when expectations of family and even referring physicians are unrealistically high, even in the presence of significant time delays, contraindication to thrombolysis or anticoagulation, or imaging evidence of early completed infarction. Figure 10.2 is an illustrative case of a 17-year-old with unrecognized vertebral artery dissection and delayed appreciation of basilar ischemia. By the time appropriate diagnostic imaging was obtained 24 hours after the onset of symptoms, the patient was ‘locked-in.’ Despite diffusion-imaging evidence of an early infarction and the long time delay, there was every expectation that something must be done. Remarkably, in consultation with the parents and the interventionalist, the attending neurologist indicated that he had seen patients recover from such severe deficits. Relieved from the responsibility of attempting too much too late, the patient was managed medically. Six months later the young woman stopped to acknowledge the cerebrovascular team at the breakfast table following morning rounds, to thank them for their efforts. Presently she is attending college, studying to be a physical therapist.

### Table 10.4 Acute stroke checklist

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time of onset</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age of patient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Able to consent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregnancy status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right/ left handed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIHSS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Able to consent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vital signs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart rate and rhythm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-coagulation status</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Contra-indications to thrombolysis:**
- Recent surgery
- Systolic BP $>$ 180 mm Hg
- Coagulopathy
- $>$ 3 hrs post ictus
- Known intra-parenchymal CNS neoplasm

**Imaging available:**
- Blood
- Parenchymal changes in over 1/3 vascular territory
- Vascular occlusion
- Perfusion mismatch

**Contact information:**
- Parent/ spouse/ medical power of attorney
- Cell phone
- Living will
- Immediate activation of emergency endovascular technologist, nurse, physician

*Desirable but not essential.

### Conclusions

Complex cerebrovascular lesions are difficult to manage and require thoughtfulness and a high level of technical skill to effect successful cure. Along the way, there are many pitfalls and opportunities for complications leading to an untoward result. This can take an emotional toll on the physician, and he or she should be constantly on guard for the emotional pain that results from a substantial complication. It is wise in my opinion when facing a challenging lesion to share the decision-making process with a colleague. Enlisting a partner in the care of these patients allows for sharing of the emotional burden if the patient does poorly and prevents second-guessing of a unilateral or solo treatment decision. The corollary to this is that open surgery and endovascular treatments are less competitive than complementary.

It is also important to remember that although these are challenging lesions, their treatment is not about this being a challenge to the physician: it is about their successful treatment for the patient. Each of these is not a test of an individual’s skill and surgical or endovascular prowess. Instead, these lesions are a serious problem for the patient, and it is selecting the best treatment with the greatest chance of cure and lowest chance of morbidity that is what matters. Remember, it is not about the surgeon, it is about the patient.
Figure 10.2
(a) Diffusion-weighted image 24 hours after the onset of symptoms in a 17-year-old female with unrecognized vertebral artery dissection, now 'locked in'. (b) Corresponding fluid-attenuated inversion recovery image. (c) MRA angiography demonstrating embolic occlusion of the basilar artery and confirmatory angiogram demonstrating basilar occlusion and collateral flow via the vermian artery arcade. (d) Follow-up diffusion image demonstrating the full extent of infarction and six-month follow-up T1-weighted scan post-contrast showing chronic infarct. The patient had recovered significant neurological function, with only mild residual dysarthria.
References


Index

abiximab 47–8
do dosage and use 48–9
Acculink stent 64
Access 65, 94
acetazolamide, SPECT study of right MCA
ischemia 17
activated clotting time (ACT), point of service
testing 47
acute ischemic stroke
anterior communicating artery (ACA) 173
anterior circulation angiography 34–40
angiotensin receptor blockers (ARBs) 89
angiotensin converting enzyme (ACE)
and stroke risk 88–9
AngioJet rheolytic catheters 67
angioplasty
AngioJet pump and drive unit 67
Angioplasty Study (CAVATAS) 95
Angioplasty and stenting 87, 97–9
detachable balloons 59–60
basal vein (of Rosenthal) 157
benzothiazepines (diltiazem) 49–50
Berenstein liquid coils 62
bivalirudin 43–4, 92
blood pressure
hypertension management after
administration of rt-PA 78
hypotensive challenge 37
and stroke risk 88–9
calcium channel blockers 49–50
Canadian–American Ticlopidine Study
(CATS) 90
capillary telangiectasias 133
cardiovascular risk factors, antiplatelet
therapy 90
carotid angiography see cerebral angiography;
CT angiography
carotid artery dissection 77, 98–100
imaging 99–100
medical treatment of dissection 100–1
revascularization strategy 101
carotid artery stenting (CAS) 91–6
complications 95
contraindications 92
pre-carotid artery stent protocol 93
requirements for performance of 93
results 94–6
standard medical therapy 92
technique 92–4
see also revascularization; stents
carotid atherosclerotic stenosis
extracranial 87–9
medical therapy 87–8
revascularization 90–8
risk of progression 87
Carotid Angioplasty Study (CAVATAS) 95
catheters 30–1
AngioJet rheolytic catheters 67
aortic arch 30–1
catheter-induced vasospasm 50
digital catheter 19–20
microcatheter 59, 145